ORIGINAL ARTICLE

CrossMark

On the Isotropic–Nematic Phase Transition for the Liquid Crystal

Mingwen Fei¹ · Wei Wang² · Pingwen Zhang³ · Zhifei Zhang³

Received: 6 May 2018 / Accepted: 21 September 2018 / Published online: 24 October 2018 © Peking University 2018

Abstract

In this paper, we study the isotropic-nematic phase transition for the nematic liquid crystal based on the Landau-de Gennes **Q**-tensor theory. We justify the limit from the Landau-de Gennes flow to a sharp interface model: in the isotropic region, $\mathbf{Q} \equiv 0$; in the nematic region, the **Q**-tensor is constrained on the manifolds $\mathcal{N} = \{s_+(\mathbf{n} \otimes \mathbf{n} - \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{I}), \mathbf{n} \in \mathbb{S}^2\}$ with s_+ a positive constant, and the evolution of alignment vector field **n** obeys the harmonic map heat flow, while the interface separating the isotropic and nematic regions evolves by the mean curvature flow. This problem can be viewed as a concrete but representative case of the Rubinstein– Sternberg–Keller problem introduced in Rubinstein et al. (SIAM J. Appl. Math. 49:116–133, 1989; SIAM J. Appl. Math. 49:1722–1733, 1989).

Keywords Liquid crystal · Isotropic-nematic phase transition · Sharp interface limit

1 Introduction

1.1 Isotropic–Nematic Phase Transition

Liquid crystal is a state of matter between liquid and solid, in which molecules tend to align a preferred direction. There are several phases in liquid crystals. One of the most

Zhifei Zhang zfzhang@math.pku.edu.cn

> Mingwen Fei ahnufmwen@126.com

Wei Wang wangw07@zju.edu.cn

Pingwen Zhang pzhang@pku.edu.cn

- ¹ School of Mathematics and Computer Sciences, Anhui Normal University, Wuhu 241002, China
- ² Department of Mathematics, Zhejiang University, Hangzhou 310027, China
- ³ School of Mathematical Sciences, Peking University, Beijing 100871, China

common phases is the nematic phase, in which the molecules tend to have the same alignment, but their positions are not correlated. Phase transitions between different phases give rise to a variety of mathematical questions of great interest. In this paper, we are concerned with the isotropic–nematic phase transition problem.

In physics, the different order parameters are used to describe the anisotropic behavior of liquid crystals. The most simple one is the vector theory, which uses a unit vector field $\mathbf{n}(x)$ to describe the locally preferred alignment of liquid crystal molecules near the material point *x*. Onsager introduced the molecular theory, in which the orientational distribution function $f(x, \mathbf{m})$ is introduced to describe the number density of molecules whose orientation is parallel to \mathbf{m} at the material point *x*. The **Q**-tensor theory uses a symmetric traceless 3×3 matrix **Q** to describe the alignment behavior of liquid crystals. Physically, **Q** could be understood as the second momentum of *f*:

$$\mathbf{Q}(x) = \int_{\mathbb{S}^2} \left(\mathbf{m}\mathbf{m} - \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{I} \right) f(x, \mathbf{m}) \mathrm{d}\mathbf{m}.$$

Since the order tensor \mathbf{Q} vanishes when f is the probability density $\frac{1}{4\pi}$ for the isotropic phase, the tensor \mathbf{Q} measures how the second moments of a given probability density deviates from the isotropic value. Thus, it is convenient to use the \mathbf{Q} -tensor theory to model the isotropic–nematic phase transition problem. More precisely, we consider the following dynamical Landau–de Gennes model in $\Omega \times (0, T), \Omega \subseteq \mathbb{R}^3$:

$$\partial_t \mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon} = \Delta \mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon} - \varepsilon^{-2} f(\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon}), \qquad (1.1)$$

where

$$f(\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon}) = a\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon}z - b(\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon})^{2} + c|\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon}|^{2}\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon} + \frac{b}{3}|\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon}|^{2}\mathbf{I}.$$
 (1.2)

Equation (1.1) can be regarded as the gradient flow of the following Landau–de Gennes energy functional:

$$\mathcal{F}(\mathbf{Q}, \nabla \mathbf{Q}) = \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} |\nabla \mathbf{Q}|^2 + \frac{1}{\varepsilon^2} F(\mathbf{Q}) \right\} \mathrm{d}x, \tag{1.3}$$

where the elastic energy density $|\nabla \mathbf{Q}|^2 \triangleq \sum_{1 \le i,j,k \le 3} |\partial_k \mathbf{Q}_{ij}|^2$, and the bulk energy density $F(\mathbf{Q})$ takes the following form:

$$F(\mathbf{Q}) = \frac{a}{2} \operatorname{Tr} \mathbf{Q}^2 - \frac{b}{3} \operatorname{Tr} \mathbf{Q}^3 + \frac{c}{4} \left(\operatorname{Tr} \mathbf{Q}^2 \right)^2,$$

with b, c > 0 are constants dependent on materials, and *a* depends on materials and temperature. It is easy to check $f(\mathbf{Q}) = F'(\mathbf{Q})$.

In general, $F(\mathbf{Q})$ may attain its (local) minimum at two sets:

$$\mathbf{Q} = 0$$
, or $\mathbf{Q} \in \mathcal{N} = \left\{ s_+ \left(\mathbf{n} \otimes \mathbf{n} - \frac{1}{3} \mathbf{I} \right) : \mathbf{n} \in \mathbb{S}^2, s_+ = \frac{b + \sqrt{b^2 - 24ac}}{4c} \right\}.$

In the Landau–de Gennes theory, $\mathbf{Q} = 0$ corresponds to the isotropic phase, which means no orientational order, while $\mathbf{Q} = s_+ (\mathbf{n} \otimes \mathbf{n} - \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{I})$ represents the nematic phase and **n** is the local orientation direction of liquid crystal molecules. We are interested in the case that the isotropic and nematic phases have equal energy, that is

$$F(0) = F\left(s_{+}\left(\mathbf{n} \otimes \mathbf{n} - \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{I}\right)\right),$$

which is equivalent to

$$b^2 = 27ac$$

In physics, it means that the temperature is at the isotropic–nematic transition temperature. In this case, we have $s_{+} = \sqrt{\frac{3a}{c}}$.

The statics and dynamics of the one-dimensional isotropic-nematic interface have been studied in [11, 17–19]. For the high-dimension case, by the asymptotic expansion method, it has been derived in [12] (see also [5] and [21] for some related cases) that the interface, referred as Γ , which separates the isotropic and nematic regions, evolves by the well-known mean curvature flow. In the isotropic region, denoted by Ω^- , $\mathbf{Q} \equiv 0$, and there is no dynamics. In the nematic region, denoted by Ω^+ , the **Q**-tensor is constrained on the manifolds \mathcal{N} , and the evolution of alignment vector field **n** obeys the harmonic map heat flow:

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t \mathbf{n} = \Delta \mathbf{n} + |\nabla \mathbf{n}|^2 \mathbf{n}, & \text{in } \Omega^+, \\ v \cdot \nabla \mathbf{n} = 0, & \text{on } \Gamma, \\ V = \sigma \kappa, & \text{on } \Gamma. \end{cases}$$
(1.4)

Here, v is the unit normal vector to Γ , V is the normal velocity of Γ , κ is the mean curvature, and σ is a constant representing the surface tension.

The goal of this paper is to justify the asymptotic limit $\varepsilon \to 0$ of the system (1.1) to the system (1.4). In [16], under the hypothesis of radial symmetry, Majum-dar–Milewski–Spicer analyzed this problem in a rigorous mathematical framework, and they proved that an interface can be generated by a large class of initial data and propagates according to the mean curvature.

A more general problem is to consider the Landau-de Gennes energy of the form:

$$\mathcal{F}(\mathbf{Q}, \nabla \mathbf{Q}) = \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} |\nabla \mathbf{Q}|^2 + \frac{L_2}{2} \partial_i \mathcal{Q}_{ij} \partial_k \mathcal{Q}_{kj} + \frac{1}{\epsilon^2} F(\mathbf{Q}) \right\} \mathrm{d}x, \tag{1.5}$$

where L_2 is an elastic coefficient characterizing the elastic anisotropy for liquid crystal materials, and is usually not zero. The effect of the L_2 term on the isotropic-nematic interface has been investigated by several studies [14, 17–19]. For example, when $L_2 > 0$, the uniaxial assumption near the interface is not valid and the biaxiality should be taken into account. In [17], it has been proved that the uniaxial solutions remains to be stable when $L_2 < 0$. In [12], the authors derived the sharp interface model by formal matched asymptotic expansion, where the Neumann-type boundary condition should be replaced by a strong anchoring condition, that is, $\mathbf{n} = v$ on Γ . However, the rigorous analysis is very challenging.

1.2 Rubinstein–Sternberg–Keller's Problem

Due to the physical importance and mathematical interests and challenges, the phase transition problems have attracted a great deal of interest in analysis and numerical simulations. The simplest model for phase transition is the Allen–Cahn equation:

$$\partial_t u = \Delta u - \frac{1}{\varepsilon^2} F'(u), \qquad (1.6)$$

where *u* is a scalar function and F(u) is a function with double well (a simple choice is $F(u) = (u^2 - 1)^2/4$). This model has been used by Allen–Cahn [2] to model the motion of antiphase boundaries in crystalline solids. It is well known that, as $\varepsilon \to 0$, the domain will be separated into two regions, where $u \to 1$ and $u \to -1$, respectively. The interface between these two regions will move as the mean curvature flow. This asymptotic limit has been rigorously analyzed by different authors via various proposals (see [3, 4, 7, 9, 10, 13]). In particular, the authors in [9] conducted the asymptotic expansions of high order to construct an approximate solution and then conclude the error estimation between the true solution and the approximate solution with the help of the spectrum of a linearized operator. Following the lines in [9], Alikakos–Bates–Chen proved the Cahn–Hilliard equation approximates the Hele–Shaw problem in [1].

In [20, 21], Rubinstein–Sternberg–Keller introduced the following equations:

$$\partial_t u = \Delta u - \frac{1}{\varepsilon^2} F'(u) \quad \text{in } \Omega,$$
 (1.7)

to study certain chemical reaction-diffusion processes, where Ω is a subset of \mathbf{R}^m , $u: \Omega \to \mathbf{R}^k$ is a phase-indicator function, and $F(u): \mathbf{R}^k \to \mathbf{R}$ is an bulk energy function which can attain it minimum at two (or even more) disjoint connected submanifolds in \mathbf{R}^k . Based on the formal asymptotic expansion, they found that the interface moves by its mean curvature and u tends to a harmonic map heat flow (to the sub-manifolds) away from the interface when $\varepsilon \to 0$.

Up to the authors' knowledge, mathematical results on rigorous analysis of $\varepsilon \to 0$ on the vector-valued Rubinstein–Sternberg–Keller problem (1.7) are quite few. Some preliminary analysis was done by Bronsard and Stoth [5] for k = 2 under the

radially symmetric setting, in which the Neumann boundary condition on the interface is also derived. The study on the asymptotic limit $\epsilon \to 0$ for minimizers of the time-independent problem was carried out by Lin et al. [15].

Despite the problems (1.1) and (1.7) are introduced from different physical motivations, the system (1.1) provides a special, but concrete and physical relevant, example to the system (1.7). Therefore, our work can be viewed as a first attempt on the rigorous analysis for the asymptotic limit $\varepsilon \to 0$ for the general time-dependent problem (1.7).

Indeed, since a symmetric traceless 3×3 matrix **Q** can be regarded as a vector with five independent variables, the problem (1.1) can be viewed as a special case of (1.7), where k = 5, and the bulk energy density *F* attains its minimum at u = 0 and a two-dimensional sub-manifold \mathcal{N} . Although the dimension k and the energy function *F* are specified, the main important feature of the problem (1.7) is still kept: the minimum of *F* are attained not just at isolated points but at a point and a manifold. This fact induces a non-trivial dynamics, i.e., a harmonic map heat flow into \mathcal{N} , in one bulk region. As we will show, the high dimensionality of the minima manifolds will bring some serious difficulties into our problem. Therefore, understanding the dynamics of isotropic–nematic interface will shed light on the Rubinstein–Sternberg–Keller problem (1.7) with general F(u).

1.3 Main Results

We consider the whole space case $\Omega = \mathbb{R}^3$ or the periodic domain case $\Omega = \mathbb{T}^3$.

Let (\mathbf{n}, Γ) be a smooth solution to the system (1.4). For $t \in [0, T]$, we set $\Gamma_t = \Gamma \times \{t\}$. Let $\delta_0 \le \min\{1/2, (2\|\Gamma_t\|_{C^2})^{-1}\}$, and for $\delta \le \delta_0$, we define

$$\Gamma_t(\delta) = \left\{ x : \operatorname{dist}((x, t), \Gamma) \le \delta \right\}.$$

We can extend **n** to be a smooth direction field in $\Gamma_t(\delta)$.

Let $\varphi(x, t)$ be the signed distance to Γ_t . Then, we have

$$\Gamma_t(\delta) = \left\{ x \in \Omega : |\varphi(x,t)| \le \delta \right\}, \quad t \in [0,T].$$

Since Γ_t evolves according to the mean curvature, we have

$$\varphi_t - \Delta \varphi = 0 \quad \text{on } \Gamma. \tag{1.8}$$

We also introduce

 $\Gamma(\delta) = \Gamma_t(\delta) \times [0, T], \ \Omega_t^{\pm} = \{ x \in \Omega : \varphi(x, t) \ge 0 \}, \ \Omega^{\pm} = \Omega_t^{\pm} \times [0, T], \ t \in [0, T].$

Our first result is the existence of approximated solutions to (1.1) up to arbitrary order of ε , which is based on the matched asymptotic method.

Theorem 1.1 Given a smooth solution (\mathbf{n}, Γ) in $\Omega^+ \times [0, T]$ to (1.4); then, for any $k \in \mathbb{N}$, there exists an approximate solution $\mathbf{Q}^{[k]}(x, t)$ which is close to $s_+(\mathbf{nn} - \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{I})$ and 0 in $\Omega^+ \setminus \Gamma(\delta)$ and $\Omega^- \setminus \Gamma(\delta)$, respectively, and satisfies

$$\partial_t \mathbf{Q}^{[k]} = \Delta \mathbf{Q}^{[k]} - \frac{1}{\varepsilon^2} f(\mathbf{Q}^{[k]}) + \mathfrak{R}_k^{\varepsilon}, \quad (x, t) \in \Omega \times (0, T),$$
(1.9)

where

 $\mathfrak{R}_{k}^{\varepsilon} = O(\varepsilon^{k-1}).$

In what follows, we let $\mathbf{Q}_{A}^{\epsilon} = \mathbf{Q}^{[k]}$ be the approximated solution. To estimate the error between the real solution and the approximate solution, the most key ingredient is to establish the following *spectral condition* of a linearized operator.

Theorem 1.2 (Spectral condition) *There exists a positive constant C independent of* ε and $t \in [0, T]$, such that

$$\int_{\Omega} \left(|\nabla \mathbf{Q}|^2 + \varepsilon^{-2} (\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}_A^{\varepsilon}} \mathbf{Q} : \mathbf{Q}) \right) dx \ge -C \int_{\Omega} |\mathbf{Q}|^2 dx, \tag{1.10}$$

for any traceless and symmetric 3×3 matrix **Q**. Here, $\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}_{4}^{\varepsilon}}\mathbf{Q}$ is defined in (2.9).

With the help of the spectral condition, we can estimate the error between the real solution and the approximate solution.

Theorem 1.3 *Assume that* $k \ge 10$ *and*

$$\|\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon}(x,0) - \mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon}_{A}(x,0)\|_{H^{2}(\Omega)} \le c\varepsilon^{9}$$
(1.11)

for some positive constant c. Then, there exists a positive constant C > 0 independent of ε , such that

$$\begin{split} \sup_{0 \leq t \leq T} &\int_{\Omega} |(\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon} - \mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon}_{A})(x, t)|^{2} \mathrm{d}x \leq C\varepsilon^{18}, \\ \sup_{0 \leq t \leq T} &\int_{\Omega} |\nabla (\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon} - \mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon}_{A})(x, t)|^{2} \mathrm{d}x \leq C\varepsilon^{12}, \\ \sup_{0 \leq t \leq T} &\int_{\Omega} |\Delta (\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon} - \mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon}_{A})(x, t)|^{2} \mathrm{d}x \leq C\varepsilon^{6}. \end{split}$$

In particular, there holds

$$\left\|\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon}-\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon}_{A}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\Omega\times(0,T))}\leq C\varepsilon^{3}.$$

As a corollary of Theorem 1.3, we have the following.

Corollary 1.4 There exists a positive constant C > 0 independent of ε such that

$$\left\| \mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon} - \left(\eta \left(\frac{\varphi}{\delta} \right) s \left(\frac{\varphi}{\varepsilon} + \varphi^{(1)} \right) + \left(1 - \eta \left(\frac{\varphi}{\delta} \right) \right) \mathbf{1}_{\{(x,t) \in \Omega^+\}} s_+ \right) \left(\mathbf{nn} - \frac{1}{3} \mathbf{I} \right) \right\|_{L^{\infty}(\Omega \times (0,T))} \le C\varepsilon,$$
(1.12)

where and in what follows $\eta \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})$ is a cut-off function satisfying $\eta = 0$ in $(-\infty, -1) \cup (1, +\infty)$ and $\eta = 1$ in $(-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$, and s(z) is defined by (6.1) in "Appendix 1", and $\varphi^{(1)}$ is defined in (2.2).

Remark 1.5 In Theorem 1.1, we construct an explicit approximate solution to (1.1) around the local smooth solution of the system (1.4) by assuming the latter exists. The well-posedness of the system (1.4) will be studied in a future work.

1.4 Sketch of the Proof

The proof is based on the asymptotic expansion method. This method has been used to rigorously justify the hydrodynamic limit of the Boltzmann equation [6] and other singular limits in various problems, and developed by several authors to study the sharp interface limit of diffuse interface models such as the Allen–Cahn equation [9] and Cahn–Hilliard equations [1]. The proof consists of three steps: the construction of approximated solutions based on smooth solutions of the limit system; the spectral estimate for the linearized system around the approximated solution; and suitable energy estimates for the remainder terms. There are some new complexities or difficulties when we applied this scheme to the isotropic–nematic interface problem.

First of all, to construct the approximate solution, we have to deal with the degeneracy of the linearized operator, not only in the inner region but also in the outer region, when we solve the corrective solution of each order. To overcome this difficulty, we need to split the corrective solution into two parts: the kernel part and the out-of-kernel part, and solve them separately. In contrast, the linearized operator in outer region is always invertible in the Allen–Cahn or Cahn–Hilliard problem. More importantly, to match these approximated solutions, we have to solve a much more complicated and subtle coupling system in the bulk region and on the sharp interface.

The most difficult part is to prove an uniform-in- ϵ lower bound estimate for the first eigenvalue of the linearized operator:

$$-\Delta \mathbf{Q} + \varepsilon^{-2} \mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}_{A}^{\varepsilon}} \mathbf{Q}$$

around the approximate solution $\mathbf{Q}_{A}^{\epsilon} = \mathbf{Q}^{[k]}$. Since the operator acts on a matrix-valued function, the methods in [9] or [8] which involves the Hopf maximum principle and the Harnack inequality may not work directly. Our proof consists of two parts: estimate the linearized operator with $\mathbf{Q}_{A}^{\epsilon}$ replaced by the leading order term $\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}$, and exclude the singular effect coming from the first correction term $\mathbf{Q}^{(1)}$.

For the first part, our key observation is that, by introducing a suitable decomposition, we can reduce the problem to analyzing the spectrum of two one-dimensional linear operators acting on scalar functions [see \mathcal{J}_0 defined in (3.1) and \mathcal{J}_1 defined in (3.2)]. These two operators come from the kernel space of the linearized operator in the inner region. The first one \mathcal{J}_0 corresponds to the translational invariance of the linearized operator, which has been studied by [8]. The second one \mathcal{J}_1 , which is new, corresponds to the rotational invariance due to the rotational symmetry of the minimum manifold \mathcal{N} . It seems difficult to use the methods in [8] or [9] to analyze \mathcal{J}_1 , since its potential degenerates at $x = +\infty$. To overcome this difficulty, we employ a new method which does not need to use the Hopf maximum principle and the Harnack inequality. In addition, this method also works on the spectral analysis of \mathcal{J}_0 , and thus, we present a new proof of Lemma 2.1 in [8]. In addition, a little bit surprisingly, the homogeneous Neumann boundary condition on Γ in (1.4) plays an important role in estimating the crossing terms (see Sects. 4.2 and 4.3).

For the second part, the key observation is that the singular effect arising form the first correction term $\mathbf{Q}^{(1)}$ can be excluded by a cancellation relation between the leading order term $\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}$ and the first correction term $\mathbf{Q}^{(1)}$ (see (6.14) and Sect. 4.4).

Finally, we can follow the method in [1] and [9] to estimate the error $\mathbf{Q}^{\epsilon} - \mathbf{Q}_{A}^{\epsilon}$. Here, we use a direct and simple way; that is, estimate the following energy:

$$\mathcal{E}(t) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\Omega} |\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2}(x,t) \mathrm{d}x + \frac{\varepsilon^{6}}{2} \int_{\Omega} |\nabla \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2}(x,t) \mathrm{d}x + \frac{\varepsilon^{12}}{2} \int_{\Omega} |\Delta \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2}(x,t) \mathrm{d}x,$$
(1.13)

with

$$\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon} \triangleq \frac{\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon} - \mathbf{Q}_{A}^{\varepsilon}}{\varepsilon^{m}},\tag{1.14}$$

for m = 9. The reasons for taking m = 9 and choosing the above ε powers in the energy come from the detailed computations in Sect. 5.

Notations. For any two vectors $\mathbf{m} = (m_1, m_2, m_3)$, $\mathbf{n} = (n_1, n_2, n_3) \in \mathbb{R}^3$, we denote the tensor product by $\mathbf{m} \otimes \mathbf{n} = [m_i n_j]$, $1 \le i, j \le 3$. In the sequel, we use **mn** to denote $\mathbf{m} \otimes \mathbf{n}$ for simplicity when no ambiguity is possible. For any two tensors *A* and *B*, *A* : *B* denotes $\operatorname{Tr}(AB) = A_{ij}B_{ji}$ and $|A|^2 = A$: *A*. The divergence of a tensor is defined by $\nabla \cdot A = \partial_i A_{ij}$.

2 Construction of the Approximated Solutions

For the diffuse interface models, the solutions behave differently in regions near and away from the interface. To avoid the complicated calculations near the interface, we choose the method of asymptotic matching introduced in [1] rather than using a local parameterization of the interface as in [9] to construct the approximate solution. In the region $\Omega^{\pm} \setminus \Gamma(\delta/2)$ away from the interface, which is called *outer region*, we make the following expansion:

$$\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon} = \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(0)}(x,t) + \varepsilon \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(1)}(x,t) + \dots + \varepsilon^{k} \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(k)}(x,t) + \dots +$$

and seek the solution of the form:

$$\mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{[k]} = \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(0)}(x,t) + \varepsilon \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(1)}(x,t) + \dots + \varepsilon^{k} \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(k)}(x,t),$$
(2.1)

where k is to be determined.

While, in $\Gamma(\delta)$ called *inner region*, we perform *inner expansion* in $\Gamma(\delta)$. Let Γ^{ϵ} be the smooth interface centered in the transition region and φ^{ϵ} be the signed distance function to Γ^{ϵ} . Due to \mathbf{Q}^{ϵ} varies rapidly from Ω^{+} to Ω^{-} , we introduce a fast variable $z = \frac{\varphi^{\epsilon}}{\epsilon}$ and conduct the following expansions:

$$\varphi^{\varepsilon} = \varphi^{(0)}(x,t) + \varepsilon \varphi^{(1)}(x,t) + \dots + \varepsilon^k \varphi^{(k)}(x,t) + \dots, \qquad (2.2)$$

$$\mathbf{Q}^{\epsilon} = \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)}(z, x, t) + \epsilon \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(1)}(z, x, t) + \dots + \epsilon^{k} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k)}(z, x, t) + \dots,$$
(2.3)

where $\varphi^{(0)}(x,t) \triangleq \varphi(x,t)$.

In the overlapped region $\Gamma(\delta) \setminus \Gamma(\delta/2) = (\Omega \setminus \Gamma(\delta/2)) \cap \Gamma(\delta)$, two kinds of solutions in *outer expansion* and *inner expansion* should be a good approximation, and thus, they have to be almost the same. This gives a *matching condition* or a "boundary condition" for $\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(i)}(z, x, t)$, that is

$$\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(i)}(\pm\infty, x, t) = \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(i)}(x, t), \quad i = 0, 1, \dots.$$
(2.4)

In $\Gamma(\delta)$, we then truncate φ^{ϵ} and seek the solution of the form:

$$\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{[k]}(x,t) = \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)}\left(\frac{\varphi^{[k]}}{\varepsilon}, x, t\right) + \varepsilon \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(1)}\left(\frac{\varphi^{[k]}}{\varepsilon}, x, t\right) + \dots + \varepsilon^{k} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k)}\left(\frac{\varphi^{[k]}}{\varepsilon}, x, t\right),$$
(2.5)

with

$$\varphi^{[k]}(x,t) = \varphi^{(0)}(x,t) + \varepsilon \varphi^{(1)}(x,t) + \dots + \varepsilon^k \varphi^{(k)}(x,t).$$

Then, we define the approximate solution

$$\mathbf{Q}^{[k]} = (1 - \eta(\varphi/\delta))\mathbf{Q}_{O}^{[k]} + \eta(\varphi/\delta)\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{[k]},$$
(2.6)

where

$$\mathbf{Q}_{O}^{[k]} = \mathbf{1}_{\{(x,t)\in\Omega^{+}\}}\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{[k]} + \mathbf{1}_{\{(x,t)\in\Omega^{-}\}}\mathbf{Q}_{-}^{[k]},$$

and recall that $\eta \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})$ is a cut-off function satisfying $\eta = 0$ in $(-\infty, -1) \cup (1, +\infty)$ and $\eta = 1$ in $(-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$.

2.1 Outer Expansion

We introduce the notations

$$\mathbf{B}(\mathbf{Q}_1, \mathbf{Q}_2) := b\left(\frac{2}{3}\mathbf{I}(\mathbf{Q}_1 : \mathbf{Q}_2) - \mathbf{Q}_1\mathbf{Q}_2 - \mathbf{Q}_2\mathbf{Q}_1\right), \tag{2.7}$$

$$\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{Q}_{1},\mathbf{Q}_{2},\mathbf{Q}_{3}) := c \left(\mathbf{Q}_{1}(\mathbf{Q}_{2}:\mathbf{Q}_{3}) + \mathbf{Q}_{2}(\mathbf{Q}_{1}:\mathbf{Q}_{3}) + \mathbf{Q}_{3}(\mathbf{Q}_{1}:\mathbf{Q}_{2}) \right), \quad (2.8)$$

$$\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}_0}\mathbf{Q}_1 := a\mathbf{Q}_1 + \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{Q}_1, \mathbf{Q}_0) + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{Q}_1, \mathbf{Q}_0, \mathbf{Q}_0).$$
(2.9)

We perform *outer expansion* in the Ω^{\pm} rather than $\Omega^{\pm} \setminus \Gamma(\delta/2)$ using the Hilbert expansion method as in [23, 24]. In Ω^{\pm} , we assume that

$$\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon} = \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(0)}(x,t) + \varepsilon \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(1)}(x,t) + \dots + \varepsilon^{k} \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(k)}(x,t) + \dots,$$

where $\mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(i)}(x, t)$ are smooth functions which are independent of ε . Then, we have

$$f(\mathbf{Q}^{\epsilon}) = f(\mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(0)}) + \epsilon \mathcal{H}_{\pm} \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(1)} + \sum_{k \ge 2} \epsilon^{k} \left(\mathcal{H}_{\pm} \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(k)} + \mathbf{B}_{\pm}^{(k-1)} + \mathbf{C}_{\pm}^{(k-1)} \right), \quad (2.10)$$

where

$$\mathcal{H}_{\pm}\mathbf{Q} = \mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(0)}}\mathbf{Q},\tag{2.11}$$

$$\mathbf{B}_{\pm}^{(k-1)} = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} \mathbf{B} \big(\mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(i)}, \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(k-i)} \big),$$
(2.12)

$$\mathbf{C}_{\pm}^{(k-1)} = \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} \mathbf{C} \left(\mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(i)}, \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(k-i)}, \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(0)} \right) + c \sum_{1 \le i,j \le k-1, i+j \le k-1} \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(k-i-j)} \left(\mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(i)} : \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(j)} \right).$$
(2.13)

Equating the $O(\epsilon^k)(k \ge -2)$ system in (1.1) yields that

$$O(\varepsilon^{-2})$$
: $f(\mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(0)}) = 0,$ (2.14)

$$O(\varepsilon^{-1}): \quad \mathcal{H}_{\pm}\mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(1)} = 0, \tag{2.15}$$

$$O(\varepsilon^{k})(k \ge 0) : \quad \mathcal{H}_{\pm} \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(k+2)} = \frac{\partial \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(k)}}{\partial t} - \Delta \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(k)} - \mathbf{B}_{\pm}^{(k+1)} - \mathbf{C}_{\pm}^{(k+1)}.$$
(2.16)

2.1.1 Solving $\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)}$ and $\mathbf{Q}_{-}^{(k)}$ $(k \ge 0)$

Equation (2.14) implies that $\mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(0)}$ is a critical point of the bulk energy $F(\mathbf{Q})$. Thus, we may take

$$\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)}(x,t) = s_{+} \left(\mathbf{n}(x,t)\mathbf{n}(x,t) - \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{I} \right), \quad \mathbf{Q}_{-}^{(0)} = 0.$$
 (2.17)

Since $\mathbf{Q}_{-} = 0$ exactly solves (1.1), we can simply take

$$\mathbf{Q}_{-}^{(1)} = \mathbf{Q}_{-}^{(2)} = \dots = \mathbf{Q}_{-}^{(k)} = 0 \text{ in } \Omega^{-}.$$

Therefore, we only need to show how to determine $\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(i)}$ in Ω^{+} for $i \geq 1$.

Using (2.17), the linearized operator \mathcal{H}_+ can be written as follows:

$$\mathcal{H}_{+}\mathbf{Q} = bs_{+}\left(\mathbf{Q} - \mathbf{nn} \cdot \mathbf{Q} - \mathbf{Q} \cdot \mathbf{nn} + \frac{2}{3}(\mathbf{nn} : \mathbf{Q})\mathbf{I}\right) + 2cs_{+}^{2}\left(\mathbf{nn} - \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{I}\right)(\mathbf{nn} : \mathbf{Q}).$$
(2.18)

We need the following lemma from [23].

Lemma 2.1

- (i) Ker $\mathcal{H}_+ = \{\mathbf{n}\mathbf{n}^{\perp} + \mathbf{n}^{\perp}\mathbf{n} : \mathbf{n}^{\perp} \in \mathbb{V}_n\}$ with $\mathbb{V}_n \triangleq \{\mathbf{n}^{\perp} : \mathbf{n}^{\perp} \cdot \mathbf{n} = 0\}$.
- (ii) \mathcal{H}_{+} is a one-to-one mapping on $(\operatorname{Ker} \mathcal{H}_{+})^{\perp}$; here, $(\operatorname{Ker} \mathcal{H}_{+})^{\perp} \triangleq \{\mathbf{Q} : (\mathbf{Q} : \mathbf{nn}^{\perp} + \mathbf{n}^{\perp}\mathbf{n}) = 0, \forall \mathbf{n}^{\perp} \in \mathbb{V}_{\mathbf{n}}\}$ is the orthogonal complement of $\operatorname{Ker} \mathcal{H}_{+}$. Moreover, the inverse operator

$$\mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1}\mathbf{Q} = \frac{1}{bs_{+}} \Big(\mathbf{Q} - \mathbf{nn} \cdot \mathbf{Q} - \mathbf{Q} \cdot \mathbf{nn} + \frac{2}{3} (\mathbf{nn} : \mathbf{Q})\mathbf{I} \Big) + \frac{14}{bs_{+}} \Big(\mathbf{nn} - \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{I} \Big) (\mathbf{nn} : \mathbf{Q}).$$
(2.19)

To solve $\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(i)}$ in Ω^{+} for $i \ge 1$ from (2.16), we first introduce the decomposition:

$$\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(i)} = \mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i)} + \mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(i)}, \quad \mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i)} \in \operatorname{Ker} \mathcal{H}_{+}, \quad \mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(i)} \in (\operatorname{Ker} \mathcal{H}_{+})^{\perp}, \quad \text{for } i = 1, 2, \dots,$$
(2.20)

and then solve $\mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i)}$, $\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(i)}$ separately. To this end, we further introduce the orthogonal basis:

$$\mathbf{E}_0(x,t) = \left(\mathbf{nn} - \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{I}\right), \quad \mathbf{E}_1(x,t) = (\mathbf{nl} + \mathbf{ln}), \quad \mathbf{E}_2(x,t) = (\mathbf{nm} + \mathbf{mn}),$$
$$\mathbf{E}_3(x,t) = (\mathbf{ml} + \mathbf{lm}), \quad \mathbf{E}_4(x,t) = (\mathbf{ll} - \mathbf{mm}),$$

where \mathbf{l}, \mathbf{m} are smooth unit vectors, which together with \mathbf{n} form an orthogonal coordinate frame. It is easy to see that $\mathbf{E}_1, \mathbf{E}_2 \in \text{Ker } \mathcal{H}_+$ and $\mathbf{E}_0, \mathbf{E}_3, \mathbf{E}_4 \in (\text{Ker } \mathcal{H}_+)^{\perp}$. Thus, one may decompose \mathbf{P}_{\perp} and \mathbf{P}_{\top} as follows:

$$\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(i)}(x,t) = p_{i0}(x,t)\mathbf{E}_{0}(x,t) + p_{i3}(x,t)\mathbf{E}_{3}(x,t) + p_{i4}(x,t)\mathbf{E}_{4}(x,t), \qquad (2.21)$$

$$\mathbf{P}_{\mathrm{T}}^{(l)}(x,t) = p_{i1}(x,t)\mathbf{E}_{1}(x,t) + p_{i2}(x,t)\mathbf{E}_{2}(x,t).$$
(2.22)

Remark 2.2 In some situations, even though **n** is smooth, we may not able to find corresponding smooth unit vector fields \mathbf{l}, \mathbf{m} . Therefore, we assume this to ensure the existence of smooth orthogonal basis $\mathbf{E}_0-\mathbf{E}_4$.

2.1.2 Solving $\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(2)}$ and (p_{11}, p_{12})

From Eq. (2.15) and Lemma 2.1, we know that $\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)} \in \text{Ker } \mathcal{H}_{+}$. Thus

$$\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(1)} = 0, \quad \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)}(x,t) = \mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(1)}(x,t) = p_{11}(x,t)\mathbf{E}_{1}(x,t) + p_{12}(x,t)\mathbf{E}_{2}(x,t). \quad (2.23)$$

Let us define two linear operators

$$\mathcal{B}_{+}\mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)}, \mathbf{Q}), \quad \mathcal{C}_{+}\mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)}, \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)}, \mathbf{Q}).$$
 (2.24)

Lemma 2.3 If $\mathbf{Q} \in \operatorname{Ker} \mathcal{H}_+$ then $\mathcal{B}_+\mathbf{Q}$, $\mathcal{C}_+\mathbf{Q} \in (\operatorname{Ker} \mathcal{H}_+)^{\perp}$.

Proof If suffices to prove that for $\mathbf{P}_1, \mathbf{P}_2 \in \text{Ker } \mathcal{H}_+, \mathcal{B}_+\mathbf{P}_1 : \mathbf{P}_2 = \mathcal{C}_+\mathbf{P}_1 : \mathbf{P}_2 = 0$. As $\mathbf{Q}_+^{(1)}, \mathbf{P}_1, \mathbf{P}_2 \in \text{Ker } \mathcal{H}_+$, we may assume that

 $\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)} = \mathbf{n}\mathbf{m}_0 + \mathbf{m}_0\mathbf{n}, \quad \mathbf{P}_1 = \mathbf{n}\mathbf{m}_1 + \mathbf{m}_1\mathbf{n}, \quad \mathbf{P}_2 = \mathbf{n}\mathbf{m}_2 + \mathbf{m}_2\mathbf{n}, \quad \text{where } \mathbf{m}_0, \mathbf{m}_1, \mathbf{m}_2 \perp \mathbf{n}.$ Then, it is easy to verify that $C_+\mathbf{P}_1 : \mathbf{P}_2 = 0$ and

$$\mathcal{B}_{+}\mathbf{P}_{1}:\mathbf{P}_{2}=-2b(\mathbf{m}_{0}\mathbf{m}_{1}+\mathbf{m}_{1}\mathbf{m}_{0}):(\mathbf{n}\mathbf{m}_{2}+\mathbf{m}_{2}\mathbf{n})=0.$$

From (2.12)–(2.13) for k = 2, we have

$$\mathbf{B}_{+}^{(1)} = \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{B}_{+} \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)}, \quad \mathbf{C}_{+}^{(1)} = \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{C}_{+} \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)}.$$

Thus, by (2.16) for k = 0, we get

$$\mathcal{H}_{+}\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(2)} = \frac{\partial \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)}}{\partial t} - \Delta \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)} - \frac{1}{2}\mathcal{B}_{+}\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)} - \frac{1}{2}\mathcal{C}_{+}\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)}.$$
 (2.25)

As $\mathcal{H}_+\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(2)}, \mathcal{B}_+\mathbf{Q}_+^{(1)}, \mathcal{C}_+\mathbf{Q}_+^{(1)} \in (\text{Ker } \mathcal{H}_+)^{\perp}$, we have

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)}}{\partial t} - \Delta \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)} \in (\text{Ker } \mathcal{H}_{+})^{\perp}.$$

This is a compatibility condition on the solvability of (2.25), which can be ensured if we choose $\mathbf{n}(x,t)$ solving the heat flow (1.4). Using the invertibility of \mathcal{H}_+ in (Ker \mathcal{H}_+)^{\perp}, we can write

$$\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(2)} = \mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1} \left(\frac{\partial \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)}}{\partial t} - \Delta \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)} - \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{B}_{+} \mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(1)} - \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{C}_{+} \mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(1)} \right) =: \mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1} \mathbf{A}_{1}; \quad (2.26)$$

here, \mathbf{A}_1 depends on $\mathbf{Q}_+^{(0)}$ and $\mathbf{Q}_+^{(1)}$. From (2.16) for k = 1, we have

$$\mathcal{H}_{+}\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(3)} = \frac{\partial \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)}}{\partial t} - \Delta \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)} - \mathcal{B}_{+}\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(2)} - \mathcal{C}_{+}\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(2)}.$$
 (2.27)

This leads to the following compatibility condition for $\mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(1)}$ (recall $\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(1)} = 0$):

$$\partial_t \mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(1)} - \Delta \mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(1)} - \mathcal{B}_+ \mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(2)} - \mathcal{C}_+ \mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(2)} = \mathcal{H}_+ \mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(3)} + \mathcal{B}_+ \mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(2)} + \mathcal{C}_+ \mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(2)} \in (\text{Ker } \mathcal{H}_+)^{\perp}.$$
(1)
(2.28)

Substituting (2.26) into 2.28 gives an equation for $\mathbf{P}_{\mathrm{T}}^{(1)}$:

$$\partial_{t} p_{11} - \Delta p_{11} = p_{11} \Big(\frac{1}{2} \big(\Delta \mathbf{E}_{1} : \mathbf{E}_{1} \big) + b(\mathbf{nn} + \mathbf{ll}) : \mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1} \Big(\partial_{t} \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)} - \Delta \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)} \Big) \Big) + p_{12} \Big(\frac{1}{2} \big(\Delta \mathbf{E}_{2} : \mathbf{E}_{1} \big) + b \Big(\mathbf{ml} : \mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1} \Big(\partial_{t} \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)} - \Delta \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)} \Big) \Big) - \partial_{t} \mathbf{m} \cdot \mathbf{l} \Big) + 2 (\nabla p_{12} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{m} \cdot \mathbf{l} - 4 c p_{11} (p_{11}^{2} + p_{12}^{2}),$$
(2.29)

$$\partial_{t}p_{12} - \Delta p_{12} = p_{12} \left(\frac{1}{2} \left(\Delta \mathbf{E}_{2} : \mathbf{E}_{2} \right) + b(\mathbf{nn} + \mathbf{mm}) : \mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1} \left(\partial_{t} \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)} - \Delta \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)} \right) \right) + p_{11} \left(\frac{1}{2} \left(\Delta \mathbf{E}_{1} : \mathbf{E}_{2} \right) + b \left(\mathbf{lm} : \mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1} \left(\partial_{t} \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)} - \Delta \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)} \right) \right) - \partial_{t} \mathbf{l} \cdot \mathbf{m} \right) + 2 (\nabla p_{11} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{l} \cdot \mathbf{m} - 4 c p_{12} (p_{11}^{2} + p_{12}^{2}).$$
(2.30)

To solve the system, we have to know the boundary conditions for $\mathbf{P}_{T}^{(1)}$ on Γ , which will be fixed in the next section by matching the outer and inner expansions.

Once $\mathbf{P}_{\mathsf{T}}^{(1)}$ is solved, then $\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(2)}$ is solved by (2.26). In addition, we know from (2.27) and (2.28) that

$$\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(3)} = \mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1} \Big(\partial_{t} \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)} - \Delta \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)} - \mathcal{B}_{+} \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(2)} - \mathcal{C}_{+} \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(2)} \Big) \\ = \mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1} \Big(-\mathcal{B}_{+} \mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(2)} - \mathcal{C}_{+} \mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(2)} + \partial_{t} \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)} - \Delta \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)} - \mathcal{B}_{+} \mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(2)} - \mathcal{C}_{+} \mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(2)} \Big)$$
(2.31)
=: $\mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1} \mathbf{A}_{2}$,

and here, A_2 depends on $\mathbf{Q}_+^{(0)}, \mathbf{Q}_+^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{Q}_+^{(2)}$. Note that $\mathbf{P}_T^{(2)}$ is still unknown which will be solved in the next step.

2.1.3 Solving $\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(i+1)}$ and (p_{i1}, p_{i2}) $(i \ge 2)$

Let us assume that $\mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(j)}$, $\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(j+1)}$ $(1 \le j \le i-1)$ have been determined for $i \ge 2$, and

$$\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(i+1)} = \mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1} \left(\frac{\partial \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(i-1)}}{\partial t} - \Delta \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(i-1)} - \mathbf{B}_{+}^{(i)} - \mathbf{C}_{+}^{(i)} \right) =: \mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1} \mathbf{A}_{i}.$$
(2.32)

Here, \mathbf{A}_i depends on $\{\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(j)}\}_{j=0}^{j=i}$. Then, we can write

$$\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(i+1)} = \mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1} \left(-\mathcal{B}_{+} \mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i)} - \mathcal{C}_{+} \mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i)} + \mathbf{D}^{(i)} \right)$$
(2.33)

with $\mathbf{D}^{(i)} = \mathbf{D}^{(i)}(\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}_+, \mathbf{Q}^{(1)}_+, \dots, \mathbf{Q}^{(i-1)}_+, \mathbf{P}^{(i)}_\perp)$. We will show how to solve $\mathbf{P}^{(i)}_\top$ and $\mathbf{P}^{(i+1)}_\perp$. First of all, we may write

$$\begin{split} \mathbf{B}_{+}^{(i+1)} &= \mathcal{B}_{+}\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(i+1)} + b\left(\frac{1}{3}\mathbf{I}\sum_{\substack{2 \leq j \leq i}} (\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(j)}:\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(i+2-j)}) - \sum_{\substack{2 \leq j \leq i}} \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(j)}\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(i+2-j)}\right) \\ &= \mathcal{B}_{+}\mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i+1)} + \mathcal{B}_{+}\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(i+1)} + \tilde{\mathbf{B}}^{(i)}, \end{split}$$

where $\tilde{\mathbf{B}}^{(i)}$ only depends on $\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)}, \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(i)}$. Similarly, we may write

$$\mathbf{C}_{+}^{(i+1)} = \mathcal{C}_{+} \mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i+1)} + \mathcal{C}_{+} \mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(i+1)} + \tilde{\mathbf{C}}^{(i)}$$

where $\tilde{\mathbf{C}}^{(i)} = \tilde{\mathbf{C}}^{(i)}(\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)}, \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(i)})$. Then, from (2.16), we have

$$\begin{split} \mathcal{H}_{+}\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(i+2)} &= \partial_{t}\mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i)} - \Delta\mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i)} - \mathcal{B}_{+}\mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i+1)} - \mathcal{C}_{+}\mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i+1)} - \mathcal{B}_{+}\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(i+1)} - \mathcal{C}_{+}\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(i+1)} \\ &+ \partial_{t}\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(i)} - \Delta\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(i)} - \tilde{\mathbf{B}}^{(i)} - \tilde{\mathbf{C}}^{(i)} \\ &= \partial_{t}\mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i)} - \Delta\mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i)} - \mathcal{B}_{+}\mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i+1)} - \mathcal{C}_{+}\mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i+1)} + (\mathcal{B}_{+} + \mathcal{C}_{+})\mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1}(\mathcal{B}_{+} + \mathcal{C}_{+})\mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i)} \\ &+ \partial_{t}\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(i)} - \Delta\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(i)} - \tilde{\mathbf{B}}^{(i)} - \tilde{\mathbf{C}}^{(i)} - (\mathcal{B}_{+} + \mathcal{C}_{+})\mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1}\mathbf{D}^{(i)}, \end{split}$$

which leads to the following compatibility condition for $\mathbf{P}_{T}^{(i)}$:

$$\partial_{t} \mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i)} - \Delta \mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i)} + (\mathcal{B}_{+} + \mathcal{C}_{+}) \mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1} (\mathcal{B}_{+} + \mathcal{C}_{+}) \mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i)} + \partial_{t} \mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(i)} - \Delta \mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(i)} - \tilde{\mathbf{B}}^{(i)} - \tilde{\mathbf{C}}^{(i)} - (\mathcal{B}_{+} + \mathcal{C}_{+}) \mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1} \mathbf{D}^{(i)} = \mathcal{H}_{+} \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(i+2)} + \mathcal{B}_{+} \mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i+1)} + \mathcal{C}_{+} \mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i+1)} \in (\text{Ker } \mathcal{H}_{+})^{\perp}.$$
(2.34)

This defines an equation for $\mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i)}$ in terms of p_{i1} and p_{i2} in Ω_+ . Together, with boundary conditions on Γ for p_{i1} and p_{i2} , which will be specified in next section, we can solve $\mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i)}$. Once $\mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(i)}$ is determined, we can solve $\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(i+1)}$ according to (2.33).

2.2 Inner Expansion

In this subsection, we perform *inner expansion* (2.3) in $\Gamma(\delta)$. More precisely, we show how to construct a family of functions:

$$\varphi^{(0)}(x,t), \ \varphi^{(1)}(x,t), \dots, \varphi^{(k)}(x,t), \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)}(z,x,t), \ \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(1)}(z,x,t), \dots, \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k)}(z,x,t),$$

such that

$$\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{[k]}(x,t) = \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)}\left(\frac{1}{\varepsilon}\varphi^{[k]}(x,t), x, t\right) + \varepsilon \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(1)}\left(\frac{1}{\varepsilon}\varphi^{[k]}(x,t), x, t\right) + \dots + \varepsilon^{k}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k)}\left(\frac{1}{\varepsilon}\varphi^{[k]}(x,t), x, t\right)$$

is a good approximation of \mathbf{Q}^{ε} in $\Gamma(\delta)$

One can easily find from the fact $|\nabla \varphi^{\varepsilon}|^2 = 1$ that

$$\nabla \varphi^{(0)} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(i)} = \begin{cases} 1, & i = 0; \\ 0, & i = 1; \\ -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^{i-1} \nabla \varphi^{(j)} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(i-j)}, & i \ge 2. \end{cases}$$
(2.35)

 \square

The truncated function $\varphi^{[k]}(x,t)$ is no longer a distance function, as $|\nabla \varphi^{[k]}| \neq 1$ (although it is small). Nevertheless, $\varphi^{[k]}(x,t)$ is the *k*th approximation of the signed distance function from *x* to the interface $\Gamma_t^k \triangleq \{x : \varphi^{[k]}(x,t) = 0\}$. Actually, we have the following lemma.

Lemma 2.4 Let $0 \le i \le k$. For every fixed $t \in [0, T]$, let $r_t(x)$ be the signed distance from x to Γ_t^i . Then, for small ε ,

$$\|r_t(x) - \varphi^{[i]}(x,t)\|_{C^1(\Gamma_t(\delta))} = O(\varepsilon^{i+1}).$$
(2.36)

Proof Noting that $|\nabla \varphi^{[i]}|^2 = 1 + O(\epsilon^{i+1})$; then, for small ϵ , one gets

$$|\nabla \varphi^{[i]}| = 1 + O(\varepsilon^{i+1})$$

and

$$\begin{split} |\nabla r_t(x) - \nabla \varphi^{[i]}(x,t)|^2 &= |\nabla r_t(x)|^2 - 2\nabla \varphi^{[i]}(x,t) \cdot \nabla r_t(x) + |\nabla \varphi^{[i]}(x,t)|^2 \\ &= 1 - 2|\nabla \varphi^{[i]}(x,t)| + |\nabla \varphi^{[i]}(x,t)|^2 \\ &= \left(1 - |\nabla \varphi^{[i]}(x,t)|\right)^2 = O(\epsilon^{2(i+1)}). \end{split}$$

Choosing $x_0 \in \Gamma^i$, i.e., $r_t(x_0) = \varphi^{[i]}(x_0, t) = 0$, then

$$\begin{aligned} |r_t(x) - \varphi^{[i]}(x,t)| &= |r_t(x) - \varphi^{[i]}(x,t) - r_t(x_0) + \varphi^{[i]}(x_0,t)| \\ &= \left| \int_0^1 \left(\nabla r_t(t'x + (1-t')x_0) - \nabla \varphi^{[i]} \big((t'x + (1-t')x_0), t \big) \right) \cdot (x-x_0) dt' \right| \\ &\leq C \varepsilon^{i+1}; \end{aligned}$$

here, *C* is independent of $t \in [0, T]$ and small ε .

Motivated by [1], we modify the system (1.1) in the inner region as follows:

$$\mathbf{Q}_{t}^{\varepsilon} = \Delta \mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon} - \varepsilon^{-2} f(\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon}) + \varepsilon^{-1} \mathbf{G}^{\varepsilon} \zeta'(\varphi^{\varepsilon} - \varepsilon z), \qquad (2.37)$$

where

$$\mathbf{G}^{\varepsilon}(x,t) = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^m \mathbf{G}^{(m)}(x,t),$$

and $\zeta \in C^3(\mathbb{R}) : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ is a function related the leading order profile of **Q** in the inner region. In particular, $\zeta(z)$ satisfies

$$\zeta(z) = 0 \text{ if } z \le s^{-1}(s_+/5), \quad \zeta(z) = 1 \text{ if } z \ge s^{-1}(4s_+/5), \tag{2.38}$$

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta'' s' dz = 0, \quad \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s dz}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s' dz} - \frac{s_{+}^{2}}{2 \int_{\mathbb{R}} (s')^{2} dz} = 0, \quad (2.39)$$

where the monotonic function s(z) is given by (2.50). Such a function $\zeta(z)$ will be constructed in Lemma 6.2.

Remark 2.5 Due to $z = \frac{\varphi^{\epsilon}}{\epsilon}$ in (2.37), we have $\mathbf{G}^{\epsilon} \zeta'(\varphi^{\epsilon} - \epsilon z) = 0$, and thus, we do not change the system (1.1). However, the equations for $\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(i)}$ ($i \ge 1$) have been changed in order that $\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(i)}$ ($i \ge 1$) are solvable in our framework. More importantly, the matching condition (2.4) and the cancellation property (6.14) could hold.

2.2.1 The Leading Order $\mathbf{Q}_{l}^{(0)}$

For $k \ge 2$, let

$$\mathbf{B}_{I}^{(k-1)} = b \left(\frac{1}{3} \mathbf{I} \sum_{1 \le i \le k-1} (\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(i)} : \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k-i)}) - \sum_{1 \le i \le k-1} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(i)} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k-i)} \right), \quad (2.40)$$

$$\mathbf{C}_{I}^{(k-1)} = c \left\{ 2 \sum_{1 \le i \le k-1} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(i)}(\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)} : \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k-i)}) + \sum_{1 \le i,j \le k-1, i+j \le k} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k-i-j)}(\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(i)} : \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(j)}) \right\}.$$
(2.41)

Then, we have

$$f(\mathbf{Q}^{\epsilon}) = f(\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)}) + \epsilon \mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)}} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(1)} + \sum_{k \ge 2} \epsilon^{k} \Big(\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)}} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k)} + \mathbf{B}_{I}^{(k-1)} + \mathbf{C}_{I}^{(k-1)} \Big).$$
(2.42)

Notice that

$$\partial_{t}\mathbf{Q}^{\epsilon} - \Delta\mathbf{Q}^{\epsilon} = -\epsilon^{-2}\partial_{zz}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)} - \epsilon^{-1}\left(\partial_{zz}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(1)} + \partial_{z}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)}\left(\Delta\varphi^{(0)} - \partial_{t}\varphi^{(0)}\right) + 2\nabla_{x}\partial_{z}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)} \cdot \nabla\varphi^{(0)}\right)$$
$$- \sum_{k\geq0} \epsilon^{k} \left(\partial_{zz}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k+2)} + \sum_{0\leq i\leq k+1} \left(\partial_{z}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(i)}\left(\Delta\varphi^{(k+1-i)} - \partial_{t}\varphi^{(k+1-i)}\right) + 2\nabla_{x}\partial_{z}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(i)} \cdot \nabla\varphi^{(k+1-i)}\right) + \Delta\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k)} - \partial_{t}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k)}\right), \qquad (2.43)$$

and define

$$\mathcal{L}_{I}\mathbf{Q}(z) := -\partial_{zz}\mathbf{Q} + \mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)}}\mathbf{Q} = -\frac{\mathrm{d}^{2}}{\mathrm{d}z^{2}}\mathbf{Q} + \mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)}}\mathbf{Q}, \quad z \in (-\infty, +\infty),$$

and here, we used the notation $\frac{d^2}{dz^2}$, since (x, t) is seen as a fixed parameter when we solve $\mathbf{Q}_I^{(i)}$ (i = 1, 2, ...). Then, we have the following systems for order ε^{-2} , ε^{-1} and ε^k $(k \ge 0)$, respectively:

$$\partial_{zz} \mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)} = f(\mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)}), \qquad (2.44)$$

$$\mathcal{L}_{I}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(1)} = \partial_{z}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)}(\Delta\varphi^{(0)} - \partial_{t}\varphi^{(0)}) + 2\nabla\partial_{z}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)} \cdot \nabla\varphi^{(0)} + \varphi^{(0)}\mathbf{G}^{(0)}\zeta', \quad (2.45)$$

$$\mathcal{L}_{I} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k+2)} = \partial_{z} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)} \left(\Delta \varphi^{(k+1)} - \partial_{t} \varphi^{(k+1)} \right) + 2 \nabla \partial_{z} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(k+1)} + \varphi^{(k+1)} \mathbf{G}^{(0)} \zeta' + \partial_{z} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k+1)} \left(\Delta \varphi^{(0)} - \partial_{t} \varphi^{(0)} \right) + 2 \nabla \partial_{z} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k+1)} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(0)} + \varphi^{(0)} \mathbf{G}^{(k+1)} \zeta' + \sum_{1 \le i \le k} \left(\partial_{z} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(i)} (\Delta \varphi^{(k+1-i)} - \partial_{t} \varphi^{(k+1-i)}) + 2 \nabla \partial_{z} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(i)} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(k+1-i)} + \varphi^{(i)} \mathbf{G}^{(k+1-i)} \zeta' \right) + \Delta \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k)} - \partial_{t} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k)} - \mathbf{B}_{I}^{(k+1)} - \mathbf{C}_{I}^{(k+1)} - \mathbf{G}^{(k)} \zeta' z.$$
(2.46)

Now, we seek the solution $\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(i)}$ (*i* = 0, 1, ...), which take the form:

$$\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(i)}(z,x,t) = \mathbf{Q}_{I,\perp}^{(i)}(z,x,t) + \mathbf{Q}_{I,\top}^{(i)}(z,x,t),$$
(2.47)

where

$$\mathbf{Q}_{I,\perp}^{(i)}(z,x,t) = s_{i0}(z,x,t)\mathbf{E}_0 + s_{i3}(z,x,t)\mathbf{E}_3 + s_{i4}(z,x,t)\mathbf{E}_4,$$
(2.48)

$$\mathbf{Q}_{I,T}^{(i)}(z,x,t) = s_{i1}(z,x,t)\mathbf{E}_1 + s_{i2}(z,x,t)\mathbf{E}_2.$$
(2.49)

First of all, the leading order Eq. (2.44) has an explicit solution

$$\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)}(z,x,t) = s(z)\mathbf{E}_{0} = s(z)\Big(\mathbf{n}(x,t)\mathbf{n}(x,t) - \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{I}\Big),$$
(2.50)

where s(z) is defined by (6.1). Obviously, we have

$$\partial_{z}^{j}\partial_{x}^{l}\partial_{t}^{m}\left(\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)}(\pm|z|,x,t)-\mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(0)}(x,t)\right)=O\left(e^{-\sqrt{a}|z|}\right), \quad \text{as } |z|\to+\infty, \quad (2.51)$$

for all $j, l, m \ge 0$. In fact, we only need $j, l, m \le k$ for some fixed k depending on the actual order of expansion.

In what follows, we derive the compatibility conditions for solving $\mathbf{Q}_{l}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{Q}_{l}^{(2)}$.

2.2.2 Compatibility Condition for Solving $\mathbf{Q}_{l}^{(1)}$

For $(x, t) \in \Gamma(\delta)$, noting that $(\nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{n} = 0$, let

$$\nabla_{\nabla\varphi}\mathbf{n} := (\nabla\varphi \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{n} = \phi_1(x,t)\mathbf{l}(x,t) + \phi_2(x,t)\mathbf{m}(x,t).$$
(2.52)

In addition, we choose

$$\mathbf{G}^{(0)}(x,t) = g_{00}(x,t)\mathbf{E}_0 + g_{01}(x,t)\mathbf{E}_1 + g_{02}(x,t)\mathbf{E}_2,$$

and substitute (2.50) into (2.45), and then, the right-hand side of (2.45) can be written as follows:

$$\left(\left(\Delta\varphi-\varphi_{t}\right)s'+g_{01}\varphi\zeta'\right)\mathbf{E}_{0}+\left(2s'\phi_{1}+\varphi\zeta'g_{01}\right)\mathbf{E}_{1}+\left(2s'\phi_{2}+\varphi\zeta'g_{02}\right)\mathbf{E}_{2},$$

In addition, one has

$$\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)}}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(1)} = \left(a + \frac{2b}{3}s + \frac{2c}{3}s^{2}\right)\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(1)} - bs\left(\mathbf{nn} \cdot \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(1)} + \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(1)} \cdot \mathbf{nn}\right) + 2\left(cs^{2}\mathbf{nn} + \frac{1}{3}\left(bs - cs^{2}\right)\mathbf{I}\right)\left(\mathbf{nn} : \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(1)}\right) = \left(a - \frac{2b}{3}s + 2cs^{2}\right)s_{11}\mathbf{E}_{0} + \left(a - \frac{b}{3}s + \frac{2c}{3}s^{2}\right)\left(s_{12}\mathbf{E}_{1} + s_{13}\mathbf{E}_{2}\right)^{(2.53)} + \left(a + \frac{2b}{3}s + \frac{2c}{3}s^{2}\right)\left(s_{13}\mathbf{E}_{3} + s_{14}\mathbf{E}_{4}\right).$$

Accordingly, (2.45) is reduced to

$$\left(-s_{10}'' + \left(a - \frac{2b}{3}s + 2cs^{2}\right)s_{10}\right)\mathbf{E}_{0} + \left(-s_{11}'' + \left(a - \frac{b}{3}s + \frac{2c}{3}s^{2}\right)s_{11}\right)\mathbf{E}_{1} + \left(-s_{12}'' + \left(a - \frac{b}{3}s + \frac{2c}{3}s^{2}\right)s_{12}\right)\mathbf{E}_{2} + \left(-s_{13}''\mathbf{E}_{3} - s_{14}''\mathbf{E}_{4}\right) + \left(a + \frac{2b}{3}s + \frac{2c}{3}s^{2}\right)\left(s_{13}\mathbf{E}_{3} + s_{14}\mathbf{E}_{4}\right) = \left(\left(\Delta\varphi - \varphi_{t}\right)s' + g_{01}\varphi\zeta'\right)\mathbf{E}_{0} + \left(2s'\phi_{1} + \varphi\zeta'g_{01}\right)\mathbf{E}_{1} + \left(2s'\phi_{2} + \varphi\zeta'g_{02}\right)\mathbf{E}_{2}.$$

Here and in what follows, for a function $\tilde{s} = \tilde{s}(z, x, t)$, we write $\partial_z \tilde{s}$ as \tilde{s}' for simplicity. We denote

$$\theta(s) = a - \frac{2b}{3}s + 2cs^2, \quad \kappa(s) = a - \frac{b}{3}s + \frac{2c}{3}s^2, \quad \iota(s) = a + \frac{2b}{3}s + \frac{2c}{3}s^2.$$
(2.54)

Deringer

Combining with (2.4) (*i* = 1), we obtain the following equations for $(x, t) \in \Gamma(\delta)$:

$$-s_{10}'' + \theta(s(z))s_{10} = (\Delta \varphi - \varphi_t)s' + g_{00}\varphi\zeta', \qquad (2.55)$$

$$-s_{1j}'' + \kappa(s(z))s_{1j} = 2s'\phi_j + g_{0j}\varphi\zeta', \quad \text{for } j = 1, 2,$$
(2.56)

$$-s_{1j}'' + \iota(s(z))s_{1j} = 0, \quad \text{for } j = 3, 4,$$
(2.57)

with

$$s_{1j}(\pm\infty, x, t) = 0, \ j = 0, 3, 4; \quad s_{1j}(-\infty, x, t) = 0, \ s_{1j}(+\infty, x, t) = p_{1j}(x, t), \ j = 1, 2.$$

(2.58)

To solve $\{s_{1j}\}$ (j = 0, ..., 4), we need to study the solutions to the following ODEs in \mathbb{R} for fixed $(x, t) \in \Gamma(\delta)$:

$$-s_0''(z, x, t) + \theta(s(z))s_0(z, x, t) = f_0(z, x, t),$$
(2.59)

$$-s_1''(z, x, t) + \kappa(s(z))s_1(z, x, t) = f_1(z, x, t),$$
(2.60)

$$-s_2''(z, x, t) + \iota(s(z))s_2(z, x, t) = f_2(z, x, t).$$
(2.61)

We present the following lemmas on the solvability of (2.59)–(2.61), which will be proved in "Appendix 1".

Lemma 2.6 If the following decay conditions:

$$\left|\partial_{z}^{j}\partial_{x}^{l}\partial_{t}^{m}\left(f_{0}(z,x,t)-f_{0}^{+}(x,t)\right)\right| \leq C|z|^{k}\left(s_{+}-s(z)\right), \quad \text{for } z \to +\infty,$$
(2.62)

$$\left|\partial_{z}^{j}\partial_{x}^{J}\partial_{t}^{m}f_{0}(z,x,t)\right| \leq C|z|^{k}s(z), \quad \text{for } z \to -\infty$$
(2.63)

with some $k \in \mathbb{N}$ and the compatibility condition

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f_0(z, x, t) s'(z) dz = 0$$
 (2.64)

hold, then (2.59) has a unique bounded solution, such that $s_0(0, x, t) = 1$ and

$$\left|\partial_{z}^{j}\partial_{x}^{l}\partial_{t}^{m}\left(s_{0}(z,x,t)-s_{0}^{+}(x,t)\right)\right| \leq C|z|^{k+1}\left(s_{+}-s(z)\right), \quad \text{for } z \to +\infty, \quad (2.65)$$

$$\left|\partial_{z}^{j}\partial_{x}^{l}\partial_{t}^{m}s_{0}(z,x,t)\right| \leq C|z|^{k+1}s(z), \quad \text{for } z \to -\infty,$$
(2.66)

where j, l, m = 0, 1, ..., C > 0 is independent of z, x, t and $s_0^+(x, t) = \frac{f_0^+(x, t)}{a}$. More concretely, we have

$$s_0(z, x, t) = \frac{s'(z)}{s'(0)} + s'(z) \int_0^z (s'(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{\zeta}^{+\infty} f_0(\tau, x, t) s'(\tau) d\tau d\zeta.$$
(2.67)

Lemma 2.7 *If the following decay conditions:*

$$\left|\partial_{z}^{j}\partial_{x}^{l}\partial_{t}^{m}f_{1}(z,x,t)\right| \leq C|z|^{k}\left(s_{+}-s(z)\right), \quad \text{for } z \to +\infty,$$
(2.68)

$$\left|\partial_{z}^{j}\partial_{x}^{l}\partial_{t}^{m}f_{1}(z,x,t)\right| \leq C|z|^{k}s(z), \quad \text{for } z \to -\infty$$
(2.69)

with some $k \in \mathbb{N}$ and the compatibility condition

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f_1(z)s(z)dz = 0$$
 (2.70)

hold, then for any given $s_1^+(x, t)$, (2.60) has a unique bounded solution, such that

$$\left|\partial_{z}^{j}\partial_{x}^{l}\partial_{t}^{m}\left(s_{1}(z,x,t)-s_{1}^{+}(x,t)\right)\right| \leq C|z|^{k+1}|s_{+}-s(z)|, \quad \text{for } z \to +\infty, \quad (2.71)$$

$$\left|\partial_{z}^{j}\partial_{x}^{l}\partial_{t}^{m}s_{1}(z,x,t)\right| \leq C|z|^{k+1}s(z), \quad \text{for } z \to -\infty,$$
(2.72)

where j, l, m = 0, 1, ..., C > 0 is independent of z, x, t. More concretely, we have

$$s_1(z, x, t) = \frac{s(z)s_1^+(x, t)}{s_+} - s(z)\int_z^{+\infty} (s(\zeta))^{-2}\int_{\zeta}^{+\infty} f_1(\tau, x, t)s(\tau)d\tau d\zeta. \quad (2.73)$$

Lemma 2.8 If the following decay conditions:

$$\left|\partial_{z}^{j}\partial_{x}^{l}\partial_{t}^{m}\left(f_{2}(z,x,t)-f_{2}^{+}(x,t)\right)\right| \leq C|z|^{k}\left(s_{+}-s(z)\right), \quad \text{for } z \to +\infty,$$
(2.74)

$$\left|\partial_{z}^{j}\partial_{x}^{l}\partial_{t}^{m}f_{2}(z,x,t)\right| \leq C|z|^{k}s(z), \quad \text{for } z \to -\infty$$
(2.75)

with some $k \in \mathbb{N}$ hold, then (2.61) has a unique bounded solution, such that

Deringer

$$\left. \partial_z^j \partial_x^l \partial_t^m \left(s_2(z, x, t) - \frac{f_2^+(x, t)}{bs_+} \right) \right| \le C |z|^{k+1} \left(s_+ - s(z) \right), \quad \text{for } z \to +\infty, \quad (2.76)$$

$$\left|\partial_{z}^{j}\partial_{x}^{l}\partial_{t}^{m}s_{2}(z,x,t)\right| \leq C|z|^{k+1}s(z), \quad \text{for } z \to -\infty,$$
(2.77)

where j, l, m = 0, 1, ... and C > 0 is independent of z, x, t.

Remark 2.9 Lemma 2.6, with some slight differences, has been proved in Lemma 4.1 in [1]. In "Appendix 1", we present a different proof, which can be applied to prove Lemma 2.7–2.8.

Obviously, the Eq. (2.57) have only trivial solution $s_{13} = s_{14} = 0$. To solve (2.55), we need to ensure the compatibility condition (2.64), which requires that for $(x, t) \in \Gamma(\delta)$,

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(\left(\Delta \varphi - \varphi_t \right) (s')^2 + g_{00}(x, t) \varphi(x, t) \zeta' s' \right) \mathrm{d}z = 0.$$

For $(x, t) \in \Gamma$, we have $\varphi = 0$, and thus

$$\Delta \varphi - \varphi_t = 0,$$

which is the evolution of the interface (1.8). In addition, g_{00} is determined as follows:

$$g_{00}(x,t) = \begin{cases} \frac{(\varphi_t - \Delta \varphi) \int_{\mathbb{R}} (s')^2 dz}{\varphi \int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s' dz}, & (x,t) \in \Gamma(\delta) \backslash \Gamma; \\ \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}} (s')^2 dz}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s' dz} \left(\nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla(\varphi_t - \Delta \varphi) \right), & (x,t) \in \Gamma. \end{cases}$$
(2.78)

On the other hand, if we take g_{00} as in (2.78), then we can solve s_{10} using Lemma 2.6 in the case of k = 0. More concretely, we have

$$s_{10}(z, x, t) = \frac{s'(z)}{s'(0)} + s'(z) \int_0^z (s'(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{\zeta}^{+\infty} \left(\left(\Delta \varphi - \varphi_t \right) s' + g_{00} \varphi \zeta' \right) (\tau, x, t) s'(\tau) d\tau d\zeta$$

$$\triangleq \frac{s'(z)}{s'(0)} + \widehat{s_{00}}(z, x, t).$$
(2.79)

Accordingly, we get

$$\mathbf{Q}_{I,\perp}^{(1)} = s_{10} \mathbf{E}_0. \tag{2.80}$$

The compatibility condition (2.70) for solving s_{11} and s_{12} implies that, for $(x, t) \in \Gamma(\delta)$:

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(2\phi_1 s's + g_{01}\varphi\zeta's \right) \mathrm{d}z = 0, \quad \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(2\phi_2 s's + g_{02}\varphi\zeta's \right) \mathrm{d}z = 0.$$

For $(x, t) \in \Gamma$, we have $\varphi = 0$, and then, $\phi_1 = \phi_2 = 0$ on Γ . Thus, we can derive that **n** should satisfy the Neumann condition on the sharp interface:

$$\boldsymbol{v} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{n} = 0 \quad \text{on } \boldsymbol{\Gamma}; \tag{2.81}$$

here, $v = \nabla \varphi$ is the unit outer normal of Γ . We then determine g_{01} and g_{02} as follows:

$$g_{0i}(x,t) = \begin{cases} -\frac{\phi_i s_+^2}{\varphi \int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s dz}, & (x,t) \in \Gamma(\delta) \backslash \Gamma; \\ -\frac{s_+^2}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s dz} (\nabla \phi_i \cdot \nabla \varphi), & (x,t) \in \Gamma, \end{cases}$$
(2.82)

for i = 1, 2.

2.2.3 Compatibility Conditions for Solving $\mathbf{Q}_{l}^{(2)}$

We first write (2.46) (k = 0) as follows:

$$\mathcal{L}_I \mathbf{Q}_I^{(2)} = \mathbf{F}^{(1)} + \mathbf{G}^{(1)} \varphi \zeta', \qquad (2.83)$$

where

$$\begin{split} \mathbf{F}^{(1)} &= \partial_z \mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)} \left(\Delta \varphi^{(1)} - \partial_t \varphi^{(1)} \right) + 2 \nabla_x \partial_z \mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(1)} + \mathbf{G}^{(0)} \varphi^{(1)} \zeta' \\ &+ \partial_z \mathbf{Q}_I^{(1)} \left(\Delta \varphi - \partial_t \varphi \right) + 2 \nabla_x \partial_z \mathbf{Q}_I^{(1)} \cdot \nabla \varphi \\ &+ \Delta_x \mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)} - \partial_t \mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)} - \mathbf{B}_I^{(1)} - \mathbf{C}_I^{(1)} - \mathbf{G}^{(0)} z \zeta'. \end{split}$$

Let

$$\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(2)}(z,x,t) = \sum_{j=0}^{4} s_{2j}(z,x,t) \mathbf{E}_{j}, \quad \mathbf{G}^{(1)}(x,t) = \sum_{j=0}^{4} g_{1j}(z,x,t) \mathbf{E}_{j}.$$

Then, one has, from the similar calculation in (2.53), that the system (2.83) combined with (2.4)(i = 2) is reduced into the following five ODEs:

$$-s_{20}'' + \theta(s(z))s_{20} = \frac{3}{2} \left(\mathbf{F}^{(1)} : \mathbf{E}_0 \right) + g_{10}\varphi\zeta', \qquad (2.84)$$

$$-s_{2i}'' + \kappa(s(z))s_{2i} = \frac{1}{2} \left(\mathbf{F}^{(1)} : \mathbf{E}_i \right) + g_{1i}\varphi\zeta', \quad \text{for } i = 1, 2,$$
(2.85)

Deringer

$$-s_{2j}'' + \iota(s(z))s_{2j} = \frac{1}{2} \left(\mathbf{F}^{(1)} : \mathbf{E}_j \right) + g_{1j}\varphi\zeta', \quad \text{for } j = 3, 4,$$
(2.86)

with

$$s_{2j}(-\infty, x, t) = 0, \quad s_{2j}(+\infty, x, t) = p_{2j}(x, t), \quad j = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4.$$
 (2.87)

By Lemmas 2.6 and 2.7, to solve s_{20}, s_{21} , and s_{22} , we need the following equalities for $(x, t) \in \Gamma(\delta)$:

$$\frac{3}{2}\mathbf{E}_0: \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbf{F}^{(1)}(z, x, t) s' dz + g_{10}(x, t) \varphi(x, t) \int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s' dz = 0, \qquad (2.88)$$

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{E}_{1} : \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbf{F}^{(1)}(z, x, t) s dz + g_{11}(x, t) \varphi(x, t) \int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s dz = 0,$$
(2.89)

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{E}_2 : \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbf{F}^{(1)}(z, x, t) s dz + g_{12}(x, t) \varphi(x, t) \int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s dz = 0.$$
(2.90)

When $(x, t) \in \Gamma$, we have $\varphi(x, t) = 0$, and thus, for $(x, t) \in \Gamma$:

$$\mathbf{E}_{0} : \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbf{F}^{(1)}(z, x, t) s' dz = \mathbf{E}_{1} : \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbf{F}^{(1)}(z, x, t) s dz = \mathbf{E}_{2} : \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbf{F}^{(1)}(z, x, t) s dz = 0.$$
(2.91)

Careful computations yield that on $\boldsymbol{\Gamma}$

$$\begin{split} \left((\nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla) \partial_z \mathbf{Q}_I^{(1)} : \mathbf{E}_0 \right) &= \frac{2}{3} \nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla \partial_z s_{10}, \\ \left((\nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla) \partial_z \mathbf{Q}_I^{(1)} : \mathbf{E}_1 \right) &= 2 \nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla \partial_z s_{11} + 2 \partial_z s_{12} ((\nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{m} \cdot \mathbf{l}), \\ \left((\nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla) \partial_z \mathbf{Q}_I^{(1)} : \mathbf{E}_2 \right) &= 2 \nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla \partial_z s_{12} + 2 \partial_z s_{11} ((\nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{l} \cdot \mathbf{m}), \\ \mathbf{B}_I^{(1)} : \mathbf{E}_0 &= -\frac{b}{3} \left(\frac{2}{3} s_{10}^2 + s_{11}^2 + s_{12}^2 \right), \quad \mathbf{B}_I^{(1)} : \mathbf{E}_1 &= -\frac{2b}{3} s_{10} s_{11}, \quad \mathbf{B}_I^{(1)} : \mathbf{E}_2 &= -\frac{2b}{3} s_{10} s_{12}, \\ \mathbf{C}_I^{(1)} : \mathbf{E}_0 &= \frac{4 c s}{3} \left(s_{10}^2 + s_{11}^2 + s_{12}^2 \right), \quad \mathbf{C}_I^{(1)} : \mathbf{E}_1 &= \frac{8 c s}{3} s_{10} s_{11}, \quad \mathbf{C}_I^{(1)} : \mathbf{E}_2 &= \frac{8 c s}{3} s_{10} s_{12}, \end{split}$$

where we have used the facts that on $\boldsymbol{\Gamma}$

$$(\nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{l} \cdot \mathbf{n} = -(\nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{l} = 0, \quad (\nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{m} \cdot \mathbf{n} = -(\nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{m} = 0.$$

Consequently, we get that on Γ

$$\begin{split} \mathbf{F}^{(1)} &: \mathbf{E}_{0} = \frac{2}{3}s' \left(\Delta \varphi^{(1)} - \partial_{t} \varphi^{(1)} \right) + \frac{2}{3}g_{00}\zeta' \varphi^{(1)} + \left(2\nabla_{x}\partial_{z}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(1)} \cdot \nabla \varphi - \mathbf{B}_{I}^{(1)} - \mathbf{C}_{I}^{(1)} : \mathbf{E}_{0} \right) \\ &+ \left(\Delta_{x}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)} - \partial_{t}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)} - \mathbf{G}^{(0)}z\zeta' : \mathbf{E}_{0} \right) \\ &= \frac{2}{3}s' \left(\Delta \varphi^{(1)} - \partial_{t} \varphi^{(1)} \right) + \frac{2}{3}g_{00}\zeta' \varphi^{(1)} + \frac{4}{3}\nabla \partial_{z}s_{10} \cdot \nabla \varphi + \frac{2b}{9}s_{10}^{2} - \frac{4cs}{3}s_{10}^{2} \\ &+ \left(\frac{b}{3} - \frac{4cs}{3} \right)(s_{11}^{2} + s_{12}^{2}) + \left(\Delta_{x}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)} - \partial_{t}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)} - \mathbf{G}^{(0)}z\zeta' : \mathbf{E}_{0} \right), \\ \mathbf{F}^{(1)} : \mathbf{E}_{1} = 4s' \left((\nabla \mathbf{n} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(1)}) \cdot \mathbf{l} \right) + 2g_{01}\varphi^{(1)}\zeta' - 2g_{01}z\zeta' \\ &+ \left(2\nabla_{x}\partial_{z}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(1)} \cdot \nabla \varphi - \mathbf{B}_{I}^{(1)} - \mathbf{C}_{I}^{(1)} : \mathbf{E}_{1} \right) + \left(\Delta_{x}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)} - \partial_{t}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)} : \mathbf{E}_{1} \right) \\ &= 2s' \left((\nabla \mathbf{n} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(1)}) \cdot \mathbf{l} \right) + 2g_{01}\varphi^{(1)}\zeta' - 2g_{01}z\zeta' \\ &+ 4\nabla \partial_{z}s_{11} \cdot \nabla \varphi + 4\partial_{z}s_{12}((\nabla \mathbf{m} \cdot \nabla \varphi) \cdot \mathbf{l}) + \frac{2b}{3}s_{10}s_{11} - \frac{8c}{3}ss_{10}s_{11} \\ &+ \left(\Delta_{x}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)} - \partial_{t}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)} : \mathbf{E}_{1} \right), \end{split}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F}^{(1)} &: \mathbf{E}_2 = 4s' \left((\nabla \mathbf{n} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(1)}) \cdot \mathbf{m} \right) + 2g_{02}\varphi^{(1)}\zeta' - 2g_{02}z\zeta' \\ &+ \left(2\nabla_x \partial_z \mathbf{Q}_I^{(1)} \cdot \nabla \varphi - \mathbf{B}_I^{(1)} - \mathbf{C}_I^{(1)} : \mathbf{E}_2 \right) + \left(\Delta_x \mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)} - \partial_t \mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)} : \mathbf{E}_2 \right) \\ &= 2s' \left((\nabla \mathbf{n} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(1)}) \cdot \mathbf{m} \right) + 2g_{02}\varphi^{(1)}\zeta' - 2g_{02}z\zeta' \\ &+ 4\nabla \partial_z s_{12} \cdot \nabla \varphi + 4\partial_z s_{11} ((\nabla \mathbf{l} \cdot \nabla \varphi) \cdot \mathbf{m}) + \frac{2b}{3}s_{10}s_{12} - \frac{8c}{3}ss_{10}s_{12} \\ &+ \left(\Delta_x \mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)} - \partial_t \mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)} : \mathbf{E}_2 \right). \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the equality \mathbf{E}_0 : $\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbf{F}^{(1)}(z, x, t) dz = 0$ on Γ is equivalent to

$$\varphi_t^{(1)} = \Delta \varphi^{(1)} + \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta'(z) s'(z) dz}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} (s'(z))^2 dz} g_{01} \varphi^{(1)} + \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}} (b - 4cs) \left(s_{11}^2 + s_{12}^2\right) s' dz + 3\Phi_0^{(1)}}{2 \int_{\mathbb{R}} (s'(z))^2 dz} \quad \text{on } \Gamma,$$
(2.92)

where

$$\begin{split} \Phi_0^{(1)} &= \int_{\mathbb{R}} s' \Big(\Delta_x \mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)} - \partial_t \mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)} : \mathbf{E}_0 \Big) \mathrm{d}z - \frac{2}{3} g_{00} \int_{\mathbb{R}} z \zeta'(z) s'(z) \mathrm{d}z \\ &+ \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(\frac{4}{3} \nabla \partial_z s_{10} \cdot \nabla \varphi + \frac{2b}{9} s_{10}^2 - \frac{4cs}{3} s_{10}^2 \right) s' \mathrm{d}z. \end{split}$$

 $\stackrel{{}_{\scriptstyle{\frown}}}{\underline{\frown}}$ Springer

(2.92) is actually the evolution equation of $\varphi^{(1)}$ on Γ . Furthermore, the equalities

$$\mathbf{E}_1 : \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbf{F}^{(1)}(z, x, t) \mathrm{d}z = \mathbf{E}_2 : \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbf{F}^{(1)}(z, x, t) \mathrm{d}z = 0$$

on Γ are equivalent to

$$2s_{+}^{2}\left(\left(\nabla\mathbf{n}\cdot\nabla\varphi^{(1)}\right)\cdot\mathbf{l}\right) + 2g_{01}\varphi^{(1)}\int_{\mathbb{R}}s\zeta'dz + \int_{\mathbb{R}}\left(4\nabla\partial_{z}s_{11}\cdot\nabla\varphi + 4\partial_{z}s_{12}(\left(\nabla\mathbf{m}\cdot\nabla\varphi\right)\cdot\mathbf{l}\right) + \left(\frac{2b}{3} - \frac{8c}{3}s\right)s_{10}s_{11}\right)sdz + \Phi_{1}^{(1)} = 0,$$
(2.93)

$$2s_{+}^{2}\left(\left(\nabla \mathbf{n} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(1)}\right) \cdot \mathbf{m}\right) + 2g_{02}\varphi^{(1)} \int_{\mathbb{R}} s\zeta' dz + \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(4\nabla \partial_{z}s_{12} \cdot \nabla \varphi + 4\partial_{z}s_{11}((\nabla \mathbf{l} \cdot \nabla \varphi) \cdot \mathbf{m}) + \left(\frac{2b}{3} - \frac{8c}{3}s\right)s_{10}s_{12}\right) sdz + \Phi_{2}^{(1)} = 0,$$
(2.94)

on Γ , respectively, where

$$\Phi_i^{(1)} = \int_{\mathbb{R}} s\left(\Delta_x \mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)} - \partial_t \mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)}\right) : \mathbf{E}_i \mathrm{d}z - 2g_{0i} \int_{\mathbb{R}} z\zeta' s \mathrm{d}z, \quad i = 1, 2.$$

We can note that, if p_{11} and p_{12} are given, then

$$s_{1i}(z, x, t) = \frac{s(z)p_{1i}(x, t)}{s_{+}} - s(z) \int_{z}^{+\infty} (s(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{\zeta}^{+\infty} \left(2s'\phi_{i} + g_{0i}\varphi\zeta'\right)(\tau, x, t)s(\tau)d\tau d\zeta$$

$$\triangleq \frac{s(z)p_{1i}(x, t)}{s_{+}} + \widehat{s_{0i}}(z, x, t), \quad i = 1, 2.$$
(2.95)

Moreover, (2.92), (2.93), and (2.94) are equivalent to

$$\begin{split} \varphi_t^{(1)} &= \Delta \varphi^{(1)} + \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta'(z) s'(z) dz}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} (s'(z))^2 dz} g_{01} \varphi^{(1)} + \frac{p_{11}^2 + p_{12}^2}{2s_+^2 \int_{\mathbb{R}} (s'(z))^2 dz} \int_{\mathbb{R}} (b - 4cs) s^2 s' dz \\ &+ \frac{p_{11}}{s_+ \int_{\mathbb{R}} (s'(z))^2 dz} \int_{\mathbb{R}} (b - 4cs) s \widehat{s_{01}} s' dz + \frac{p_{12}}{s_+ \int_{\mathbb{R}} (s'(z))^2 dz} \int_{\mathbb{R}} (b - 4cs) s \widehat{s_{02}} s' dz \\ &+ \frac{1}{2 \int_{\mathbb{R}} (s'(z))^2 dz} \int_{\mathbb{R}} (b - 4cs) \left(\widehat{s_{01}}^2 + \widehat{s_{02}}^2 \right) s' dz + \frac{3\Phi_0^{(1)}}{2 \int_{\mathbb{R}} (s'(z))^2 dz}, \quad \text{on } \Gamma, \end{split}$$

$$(2.96)$$

$$2s_{+}^{2}\left(\left(\nabla\mathbf{n}\cdot\nabla\varphi^{(1)}\right)\cdot\mathbf{l}\right)+2g_{01}\varphi^{(1)}\int_{\mathbb{R}}s\zeta'dz$$

+2s_{+}\nabla p_{11}\cdot\nabla\varphi+2s_{+}p_{12}(\left(\nabla\mathbf{m}\cdot\nabla\varphi\right)\cdot\mathbf{l})+s_{+}^{-1}p_{11}\int_{\mathbb{R}}\left(\frac{2b}{3}-\frac{8c}{3}s\right)s_{10}s^{2}dz
= $-\Phi_{1}^{(1)}-\int_{\mathbb{R}}\left(4\nabla\partial_{z}\widehat{s_{01}}\cdot\nabla\varphi+4\partial_{z}\widehat{s_{02}}(\left(\nabla\mathbf{m}\cdot\nabla\varphi\right)\cdot\mathbf{l})+\left(\frac{2b}{3}-\frac{8c}{3}s\right)s_{10}\widehat{s_{01}}\right)sdz, \text{ on } \Gamma,$
(2.97)

$$2s_{+}^{2}\left(\left(\nabla \mathbf{n} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(1)}\right) \cdot \mathbf{m}\right) + 2g_{02}\varphi^{(1)} \int_{\mathbb{R}} s\zeta' dz + 2s_{+}\nabla p_{12} \cdot \nabla \varphi + 2s_{+}p_{11}(\left(\nabla \mathbf{l} \cdot \nabla \varphi\right) \cdot \mathbf{m}) + s_{+}^{-1}p_{12} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(\frac{2b}{3} - \frac{8c}{3}s\right)s_{10}s^{2}dz = -\Phi_{2}^{(1)} - \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(4\nabla \partial_{z}\widehat{s_{02}} \cdot \nabla \varphi + 4\partial_{z}\widehat{s_{01}}(\left(\nabla \mathbf{l} \cdot \nabla \varphi\right) \cdot \mathbf{m}) + \left(\frac{2b}{3} - \frac{8c}{3}s\right)s_{10}\widehat{s_{02}}\right)sdz, \quad \text{on } \Gamma.$$

$$(2.98)$$

In summary, we have a nonlinear differential system for $\varphi^{(1)}$, p_{11} , and p_{12} as follows:

$$\begin{array}{ll} (2.29), (2.30): \text{ the evolution equation for } p_{11} \text{ and } p_{12} & \text{ in } \Omega^+, \\ (2.96): \text{ the evolution equation for } \varphi^{(1)} & \text{ on } \Gamma, \\ (2.97), (2.98): \text{ the boundary condition for } p_{11} \text{ and } p_{12} & \text{ on } \Gamma, \\ \nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(1)} = 0, & \text{ in } \Gamma(\delta), \\ \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)}(x,t)\big|_{t=0} = \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)}(x,0), & \text{ in } \Omega_{0}^+, \\ \varphi^{(1)}(x,0) = 0, & \text{ on } \Gamma_0, \end{array}$$

$$(2.99)$$

where the fourth equation comes from (2.35) (i = 1). In "Appendix 1", we will give a sketch of solving (2.99). Then, we solve $\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(1)}, \mathbf{G}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{Q}_{I,\perp}^{(2)}$, and, finally, solve the inner expansion for the *k*th order ($k \ge 2$).

2.3 Proof of Theorem 1.1

From the process of our asymptotic matching expansions, we find that

$$\mathbf{Q}^{[k]} = \begin{cases} s_{+}(\mathbf{nn} - \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{I}) + O(\varepsilon), & (x, t) \in \Omega^{+} \setminus \Gamma(\delta); \\ O(\varepsilon), & (x, t) \in \Omega^{-} \setminus \Gamma(\delta). \end{cases}$$

Moreover, there hold

$$\partial_t \mathbf{Q}_O^{[k]} = \Delta \mathbf{Q}_O^{[k]} - \varepsilon^{-2} f\left(\mathbf{Q}_O^{[k]}\right) + \text{order } \varepsilon^{k-1} \text{ terms,} \quad \text{in } \Omega^{\pm},$$
$$\partial_t \mathbf{Q}_I^{[k]} = \Delta \mathbf{Q}_I^{[k]} - \varepsilon^{-2} f\left(\mathbf{Q}_I^{[k]}\right) + \text{order } \varepsilon^{k-1} \text{ terms,} \quad \text{in } \Gamma(\delta).$$

Deringer

Furthermore, due to (7.24) and (7.25), if
$$\varepsilon$$
 is small, then
 $\partial_z^j \partial_x^l \partial_t^m \left(\mathbf{Q}_I^{(k)}(z, x, t) - \mathbf{Q}_{\pm}^{(k)}(x, t) \right) = O\left(e^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}} \right)$ for $j, l, m = 0, 1, ...,$ and

 $(x,t) \in \Gamma(\delta) \setminus \Gamma(\frac{\delta}{2})$. Consequently, we can find that, for small ε , $\mathbf{Q}^{[k]}$ defined in (2.6) satisfies

$$\partial_t \mathbf{Q}^{[k]} = \Delta \mathbf{Q}^{[k]} - \varepsilon^{-2} f(\mathbf{Q}^{[k]}) + \text{order } \varepsilon^{k-1} \text{ terms}$$

=: $\Delta \mathbf{Q}^{[k]} - \varepsilon^{-2} f(\mathbf{Q}^{[k]}) + \mathfrak{R}_k^{\varepsilon}, \qquad (x, t) \in \Omega \times [0, T].$ (2.100)

This completes the proof of the theorem.

3 Spectral Analysis of the 1-D Linear Operators

In this section, we conduct the spectral analysis for two 1-D linear operators defined on the interval $I_{\varepsilon} = (-\frac{1}{\varepsilon}, \frac{1}{\varepsilon})$:

$$\mathcal{J}_0 \varphi = -\partial_z^2 \varphi + \theta(s(z))\varphi, \quad \theta(s) = a - \frac{2b}{3}s + 2cs^2, \tag{3.1}$$

$$\mathcal{J}_{1}\varphi = -\partial_{z}^{2}\varphi + \kappa(s(z))\varphi, \quad \kappa(s) = a - \frac{b}{3}s + \frac{2c}{3}s^{2} = \frac{2c}{3}(s - s_{+})\left(s - \frac{s_{+}}{2}\right). (3.2)$$

These two operators will play important roles in the proof of Theorem 1.2.

3.1 Spectral Estimates of \mathcal{J}_0

Let $||q|| = ||q||_{L^2(I_1)}$. We consider the following Neumann-type eigenvalue problem:

$$\mathcal{J}_0 q = \lambda q, \quad z \in I_{\varepsilon}; \quad q'(\pm \varepsilon^{-1}) = 0. \tag{3.3}$$

Lemma 3.1

(1) (Estimate of the first eigenvalue of \mathcal{J}_0)

$$\lambda_{\theta,1} \triangleq \inf_{\|q\|=1} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(\left(q'\right)^2 + \theta(s)q^2 \right) \mathrm{d}z = O\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}}\right); \tag{3.4}$$

here, C is a positive constant independent of small ε . (2) (Estimate of the second eigenvalue of \mathcal{J}_0)

$$\lambda_{\theta,2} \triangleq \inf_{\|q\|=1, q \perp q_{\theta}} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(\left(q'\right)^2 + \theta(s)q^2 \right) \mathrm{d}z \ge c_{\theta} > 0;$$
(3.5)

🙆 Springer

here, $q \perp q_{\theta} \Leftrightarrow \int_{I_{\epsilon}} qq_{\theta} dz = 0$, q_{θ} is the normalized eigenfunction corresponding

to $\lambda_{\theta,1}$ and c_{θ} is a positive constant independent of small ε . (3) (Characterization of the first normalized eigenfunction of \mathcal{J}_0)

$$\|q_{\theta} - \alpha s'\|^2 = O\left(e^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}}\right); \tag{3.6}$$

here, $\alpha = \frac{1}{\|s'\|}$. In addition to (3.6), we have

$$\|(q_{\theta} - \alpha s')'\|^2 = O\left(e^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}}\right).$$
(3.7)

In particular

$$\int_{I_{\varepsilon}} |q_{\theta}'|^2 \mathrm{d}z \le C.$$
(3.8)

Proof (3.4)–(3.6) have been proved in Lemma 2.1 in [8]. Here, we will use another method to prove (3.4)–(3.5). The method is helpful for us to prove (3.19) and (3.23).

(1) Thanks to (2.6) in [8], we have

$$\lambda_{\theta,1} \le O\left(e^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}}\right). \tag{3.9}$$

Let $z^* > 0$, such that $\theta(s) > \frac{3a}{4}$ for $z \in (-\infty, -z^*) \cup (z^*, +\infty)$ and $\lambda_{\theta,1} \le \frac{a}{4}$. Let q_{θ} be the normalized eigenfunction corresponding to $\lambda_{\theta,1}$. Then, $q_{\theta} > 0$ and $q'_{\theta}(\pm \frac{1}{\epsilon}) = 0$ ([22]). For any fixed $\bar{z} \in [z^*, \frac{1}{\epsilon}]$, according to the arguments (the comparison principle) in Lemma 2.1 in [8], we have

$$|q_{\theta}(\pm z)| \le |q_{\theta}(\bar{z})| \cdot \frac{\cosh\sqrt{\frac{a}{2}}\left(\frac{1}{\epsilon} - |z|\right)}{\cosh\sqrt{\frac{a}{2}}\left(\frac{1}{\epsilon} - \bar{z}\right)}, \quad z \in \left[\bar{z}, \frac{1}{\epsilon}\right].$$
(3.10)

In particular, if we choose $\bar{z} \in [z^*, z^* + 1]$, such that $|q_{\theta}(\bar{z})| \le 1$, then

$$|q_{\theta}(z)| \le O\left(e^{-C|z|}\right), \quad z \in \left[-\frac{1}{\varepsilon}, -\bar{z}\right] \cup \left[\bar{z}, \frac{1}{\varepsilon}\right].$$
(3.11)

Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{a}_{\theta,1} &= \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(\left(q_{\theta}'\right)^{2} + \theta(s)q_{\theta}^{2} \right) \mathrm{d}z \\ &= \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(\left(q_{\theta}'\right)^{2} + \frac{s''}{s'}q_{\theta}^{2} \right) \mathrm{d}z \\ &= \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(\left(q_{\theta}'\right)^{2} + \left(\frac{s''}{s'}\right)^{2}q_{\theta}^{2} + \left(\frac{s''}{s'}\right)'q_{\theta}^{2} \right) \mathrm{d}z \\ &= \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(\left(q_{\theta}'\right)^{2} + \left(\frac{s''}{s'}\right)^{2}q_{\theta}^{2} - 2\frac{s''}{s'} \cdot q_{\theta}q_{\theta}' \right) \mathrm{d}z + \frac{s''}{s'}q_{\theta}^{2} \Big|_{-\frac{1}{\varepsilon}}^{\frac{1}{\varepsilon}} \end{aligned}$$
(3.12)
$$&= \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(q_{\theta}' - \frac{s''}{s'}q_{\theta} \right)^{2} \mathrm{d}z + \frac{s''}{s'}q_{\theta}^{2} \Big|_{-\frac{1}{\varepsilon}}^{\frac{1}{\varepsilon}} \\ &\geq \frac{s''}{s'}q_{\theta}^{2} \Big|_{-\frac{1}{\varepsilon}}^{\frac{1}{\varepsilon}} = \sqrt{\frac{c}{3}}(s_{+} - 2s)q_{\theta}^{2} \Big|_{-\frac{1}{\varepsilon}}^{\frac{1}{\varepsilon}} = O\left(e^{-\frac{c}{\varepsilon}}\right). \end{aligned}$$

Due to (3.9) and (3.12), we get (3.4).

(2) Let λ_{θ,2} ≤ ^a/₄ and q_{θ,2} be the normalized eigenfunction corresponding to λ_{θ,2}, and then, q_θ ⊥ q_{θ,2}, (q_{θ,2})'(±¹/_ε) = 0 and q_{θ,2} only has one zero point denoted by z₀ in I_ε([22]). Applying the comparison arguments, (3.10) and (3.11) also hold for q_{θ,2}. Thanks to (3.10), we have z₀ ∈ (-z*, z*). Then

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda_{\theta,2} &= \lambda_{\theta,2} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} (q_{\theta,2})^2 dz = \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left(\left((q_{\theta,2})' \right)^2 + \theta(s) (q_{\theta,2})^2 \right) dz \\ &= \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left((q_{\theta,2})' - \frac{s''}{s'} q_{\theta,2} \right)^2 dz + \frac{s''}{s'} (q_{\theta,2})^2 \Big|_{-\frac{1}{\epsilon}}^{\frac{1}{\epsilon}} \end{aligned} (3.13) \\ &= \int_{I_{\epsilon}} (s')^2 \left[\left(\frac{q_{\theta,2}}{s'} \right)' \right]^2 dz + O\left(e^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}} \right). \end{aligned}$$

Set $\hat{q}_2 = s'\left(\frac{q_{\theta,2}}{s'}\right)'$ and $z_0^- = \min\{z_0, 0\}$, and then, for $z \ge z_0$

$$q_{\theta,2}(z) = s'(z) \int_{z_0}^{z} \frac{\hat{q}_2}{s'}(\tau) d\tau = s'(z) \int_{z_0^-}^{0} \frac{\hat{q}_2}{s'}(\tau) d\tau + s'(z) \int_{0}^{z} \frac{\hat{q}_2}{s'}(\tau) d\tau.$$
(3.14)

Using s'(z) > 0 in \mathbb{R} and (3.13), we get

$$\begin{aligned} \left| q_{\theta,2}(z)s'(z) \int_{z_0^-}^0 \frac{\hat{q}_2}{s'}(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau \right| &\leq C |z_0| \left| q_{\theta,2}(z)s'(z) \right| \left(\int_{z_0^-}^0 |\hat{q}_2|^2(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &\leq C \Big(\lambda_{\theta,2} + O \Big(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}} \Big) \Big) |q_{\theta,2}(z)s'(z)|. \end{aligned}$$
(3.15)

Moreover, using s'' > 0 in $(0, \frac{1}{\epsilon})$ and (3.13), we get

$$\begin{aligned} \left| q_{\theta,2}(z)s'(z) \int_{0}^{z} \frac{\hat{q}_{2}}{s'}(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau \right| &\leq \left| q_{\theta,2}(z) \right| \int_{z_{0}}^{z} |\hat{q}_{2}(\tau)| \mathrm{d}\tau \leq \left| q_{\theta,2}(z) \right| |z - z_{0}|^{\frac{1}{2}} \bigg(\int_{z_{0}}^{z} |\hat{q}_{2}(\tau)|^{2} \mathrm{d}\tau \bigg)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &\leq \left(\lambda_{\theta,2} + O\bigg(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}} \bigg) \bigg) |q_{\theta,2}(z)| |z - z_{0}|^{\frac{1}{2}}. \end{aligned}$$

$$(3.16)$$

Putting (3.15) and (3.16) into (3.14), one has

$$1 = \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} (q_{\theta,2})^2 (z) \mathrm{d}z \le C \left(\lambda_{\theta,2} + O\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}}\right) \right) \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} |q_{\theta,2}(z)s'(z)| \mathrm{d}z + \left(\lambda_{\theta,2} + O\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}}\right) \right) \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} |q_{\theta,2}(z)| |z - z_0|^{\frac{1}{2}} \mathrm{d}z \le C \left(\lambda_{\theta,2} + O\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}}\right) \right);$$
(3.17)

here, we have used the fact that $q_{\theta,2}(z)$ decays exponentially to zero at ∞ . It easily follows from (3.17) that (3.5) holds for small ε .

(3) We easily find that

$$-(q_{\theta} - \alpha s')'' + \theta(s)(q_{\theta} - \alpha s') = \lambda_{\theta,1}q_{\theta}, \quad (q_{\theta} - \alpha s')'|_{-\varepsilon^{-1}}^{\varepsilon^{-1}} = -\alpha s''|_{-\varepsilon^{-1}}^{\varepsilon^{-1}}.$$

Multiplying the above equation by $q_{\theta} - \alpha s'$, integrating by parts and using (3.6), we have

$$\begin{split} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left| \left(q_{\theta} - \alpha s' \right)' \right|^2 \mathrm{d}z &= -\int_{I_{\epsilon}} \theta(s) \left(q_{\theta} - \alpha s' \right)^2 \mathrm{d}z + \lambda_{\theta,1} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} q_{\theta}(q_{\theta} - \alpha s') \mathrm{d}z \\ &- \alpha^2 s''(\epsilon^{-1}) s'(\epsilon^{-1}) + \alpha^2 s''(-\epsilon^{-1}) s'(-\epsilon^{-1}) \\ &= O\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}} \right). \end{split}$$

This completes the proof of this lemma.

171

3.2 Spectral Estimates of \mathcal{J}_1

Let ω be a positive and bounded function, which decays exponentially to zero at $z = +\infty$ and $||q||_{\omega} = \left(\int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \omega q^2 dz\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$. We study the following Neumann eigenvalue problem:

$$\mathcal{J}_1 q = \lambda w q, \quad z \in I_{\varepsilon}; \quad q' \left(\pm \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \right) = 0.$$
 (3.18)

Lemma 3.2 (Estimate of the first eigenvalue of \mathcal{J}_1)

$$\lambda_{\kappa,1} \triangleq \inf_{\|q\|_{\omega}=1} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(\left(q'\right)^2 + \kappa(s)q^2 \right) \mathrm{d}z = O\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}}\right). \tag{3.19}$$

Proof Set $\beta = \frac{1}{\|s\|_{\omega}}$, then

$$\beta^2 = \frac{1}{\int_{I_{\epsilon}} \omega s^2 \mathrm{d}z} = \frac{1}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \omega s^2 \mathrm{d}z - \int_{-\infty}^{-\frac{1}{\epsilon}} \omega s^2 \mathrm{d}z - \int_{\frac{1}{\epsilon}}^{+\infty} \omega s^2 \mathrm{d}z} = \frac{1}{O(1) + O\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}}\right)} = O(1).$$

Together with the fact that

$$\int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((s')^2 + \kappa(s)s^2 \right) \mathrm{d}z = \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} (ss')' \mathrm{d}z = s(\varepsilon^{-1})s'(\varepsilon^{-1}) - s(-\varepsilon^{-1})s'(-\varepsilon^{-1}) = O\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}}\right),$$

we get

$$\lambda_{\kappa,1} \le \beta^2 \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((\partial_z s)^2 + \kappa(s) s^2 \right) \mathrm{d}z = O\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}}\right). \tag{3.20}$$

On the other hand, let $z^* > 0$, such that $\kappa(s) > \frac{a}{2}$ for $z \in (-\infty, -z^*)$. Assume that $\lambda_{\kappa,1} \leq \frac{\frac{a}{4}}{\sup_{z \in (-\varepsilon^{-1}, -z^*)} \omega(z)} \Leftrightarrow \lambda_{\kappa,1} \sup_{z \in (-\varepsilon^{-1}, -z^*)} \omega(z) \leq \frac{a}{4}$ and q_{κ} is the normalized eigenfunction

corresponding to $\lambda_{\kappa,1}$. Then, $q_{\kappa} > 0$ and $(q_{\kappa})'(\pm \epsilon^{-1}) = 0$ ([22]). For any fixed $\overline{z} \in [-\epsilon^{-1}, -z^*]$, by applying the comparison principle in $[-\epsilon^{-1}, \overline{z}]$, we get

$$q_{\kappa}(z) \le q_{\kappa}(\bar{z}) \frac{\cosh \frac{\sqrt{a}}{2}(\epsilon^{-1} + z)}{\cosh \frac{\sqrt{a}}{2}(\epsilon^{-1} + \bar{z})}, \quad z \in [-\epsilon^{-1}, \bar{z}].$$
(3.21)

🖄 Springer

Due to $||q_{\kappa}||_{\omega} = 1$, there exists $\hat{z} \in (-z^* - 1, -z^*)$, such that $|q_{\kappa}(\hat{z})| \leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{\omega(\hat{z})}} \leq \frac{1}{\frac{1}{z \in (-z^* - 1, -z^*)}\sqrt{\omega(z)}}$. Thus, we have

$$|q_{\kappa}(z)| \leq O(e^{-C|z|}), \quad z \in \left(-\frac{1}{\varepsilon}, \hat{z}\right).$$

Therefore, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda_{\kappa,1} &= \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left(\left(q_{\kappa}' \right)^{2} + \kappa(s) q_{\kappa}^{2} \right) \mathrm{d}z \\ &= \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left(\left(q_{\kappa}' \right)^{2} + \frac{s''}{s} q_{\kappa}^{2} \right) \mathrm{d}z \\ &= \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left(\left(q_{\kappa}' \right)^{2} + \left(\frac{s'}{s} \right)^{2} q_{\kappa}^{2} + \left(\frac{s'}{s} \right)' q_{\kappa}^{2} \right) \mathrm{d}z \\ &= \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left(\left(q_{\kappa}' \right)^{2} + \left(\frac{s'}{s} \right)^{2} q_{\kappa}^{2} - 2 \frac{s'}{s} \cdot q_{\kappa} q_{\kappa}' \right) \mathrm{d}z + \frac{s'}{s} q_{\kappa}^{2} \Big|_{-\epsilon^{-1}}^{\epsilon^{-1}} \end{aligned}$$
(3.22)
$$&= \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left(q_{\kappa}' - \frac{s'}{s} q_{\kappa} \right)^{2} \mathrm{d}z + \frac{s'}{s} q_{\kappa}^{2} \Big|_{-\epsilon^{-1}}^{\epsilon^{-1}} \\ &\geq \frac{s'}{s} q_{\kappa}^{2} \Big|_{z=-\epsilon^{-1}} = \sqrt{\frac{c}{3}} (s_{+} - s) q_{\kappa}^{2} \Big|_{z=-\epsilon^{-1}} = O\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}} \right), \end{aligned}$$

and here, we have used the fact that $q_{\kappa}(z)$ decays exponentially to zero at $-\infty$. Combining (3.20) and (3.22) yields the desired conclusion.

Lemma 3.3 (Estimate of the second eigenvalue of \mathcal{J}_1)

$$\lambda_{\kappa,2} \triangleq \inf_{\|q\|_{\omega}=1, q\perp_{\omega}q_{\kappa}} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(\left(q'\right)^2 + \kappa(s)q^2 \right) \mathrm{d}z \ge c_{\kappa} > 0; \tag{3.23}$$

here, $q\perp_{\omega}q_{\kappa} \Leftrightarrow \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \omega qq_{\kappa} dz = 0$, q_{κ} is the normalized eigenfunction corresponding to

 $\lambda_{\kappa, \nu}$ and c_{κ} is a positive constant independent of small ϵ .

Proof For clarity, we let q_2 , in this proof, be the normalized eigenfunction corresponding to $\lambda_{\kappa,2}$. Then, $q_{\kappa} \perp_{\omega} q_2$, $q'_2(\pm \frac{1}{\epsilon}) = 0$, and q_2 only has one zero point denoted by z_0 in $I_{\epsilon}([22])$. Thanks to (3.21), we have $z_0 \in (-z^*, +\frac{1}{\epsilon})$. Then, we have

$$\lambda_{\kappa,2} \int_{z_0}^{\frac{1}{\epsilon}} \omega q_2^2 dz = \int_{z_0}^{\frac{1}{\epsilon}} \left(\left((q_2)' \right)^2 + \kappa(s) q_2^2 \right) dz$$

= $\int_{z_0}^{\frac{1}{\epsilon}} \left((q_2)' - \frac{s'}{s} q_2 \right)^2 dz + \frac{s'}{s} q_2^2 \Big|_{z_0}^{\frac{1}{\epsilon}}$ (3.24)
 $\geq \int_{z_0}^{\frac{1}{\epsilon}} \left((q_2)' - \frac{s'}{s} q_2 \right)^2 dz = \int_{z_0}^{\frac{1}{\epsilon}} s^2 \left[\left(\frac{q_2}{s} \right)' \right]^2 dz.$

Moreover, set $\hat{q}_2 = s\left(\frac{q_2}{s}\right)'$, and then, for $z \ge z_0$, $q_2(z) = s(z) \int_{z_0}^z \frac{\hat{q}_2}{s}(\tau) d\tau$ and

$$|q_{2}(z)| = \left| s(z) \int_{z_{0}}^{z} \frac{\hat{q}_{2}}{s}(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau \right| \leq \int_{z_{0}}^{z} |\hat{q}_{2}(\tau)| \mathrm{d}\tau \leq |z - z_{0}|^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\int_{z_{0}}^{z} |\hat{q}_{2}(\tau)|^{2} \mathrm{d}\tau \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

Furthermore, we can observe that if $z_0 \ge 0$, then

$$\int_{z_0}^{\frac{1}{\epsilon}} \omega(z)(z-z_0) \mathrm{d} z \leq \int_0^{+\infty} \omega(z) z \mathrm{d} z \leq \int_{-z^*}^{+\infty} \omega(z)(z+z^*) \mathrm{d} z \triangleq c_0 < +\infty,$$

and if $z_0 \in (-z^*, 0)$, then

$$\int_{z_0}^{\frac{1}{\epsilon}} \omega(z)(z-z_0) \mathrm{d} z \le c_0.$$

Therefore, we get by (3.24) that

$$\int_{z_0}^{\frac{1}{\epsilon}} \omega q_2^2 \mathrm{d}z \le \left(\int_{z_0}^{\frac{1}{\epsilon}} \omega(z)(z-z_0) \mathrm{d}z\right) \left(\int_{z_0}^{\frac{1}{\epsilon}} |\hat{q}_2(\tau)|^2 \mathrm{d}\tau\right)$$
$$\le c_0 \left(\int_{z_0}^{\frac{1}{\epsilon}} |\hat{q}_2(\tau)|^2 \mathrm{d}\tau\right) \le c_0 \lambda_{\kappa,2} \int_{z_0}^{\frac{1}{\epsilon}} \omega q_2^2 \mathrm{d}z,$$

and then

☑ Springer

$$\lambda_{\kappa,2} \ge \frac{1}{c_0} \triangleq c_\kappa > 0. \tag{3.25}$$

This completes the proof of this lemma.

Lemma 3.4 (Characterization of the first normalized eigenfunction of \mathcal{J}_{l})

$$\|q_{\kappa} - \beta s\|_{\omega}^{2} = O\left(e^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}}\right), \quad \|(q_{\kappa} - \beta s)'\|^{2} = O\left(e^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}}\right), \quad \beta = \|s\|_{\omega}^{-1}; \quad (3.26)$$

here, C is a positive constant independent of small ε . In particular

$$\int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left| \left(q_{\kappa} \right)' \right|^2 \mathrm{d}z \le C.$$
(3.27)

Proof Set $\beta s = \gamma q_{\kappa} + (q_{\kappa})^{\perp_{\omega}}$. Then, $||(q_{\kappa})^{\perp_{\omega}}||_{\omega}^{2} + \gamma^{2} = 1$ and

$$O\left(e^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}}\right) = \beta^2 \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((s')^2 + \kappa(s)s^2\right) dz = \gamma^2 \lambda_{\kappa,1} + \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(\left(((q_{\kappa})^{\perp_{\omega}})'\right)^2 + \kappa(s)((q_{\kappa})^{\perp_{\omega}})^2\right) dz$$
$$\geq \gamma^2 \lambda_{\kappa,1} + \lambda_{\kappa,2} \|(q_{\kappa})^{\perp_{\omega}}\|_{\omega}^2$$
$$\geq -|\lambda_{\kappa,1}| + C \|(q_{\kappa})^{\perp_{\omega}}\|_{\omega}^2.$$

Accordingly $\|(q_{\kappa})^{\perp_{\omega}}\|_{\omega}^{2} = O\left(e^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}}\right)$ and

$$\|q_{\kappa} - \beta s\|_{\omega}^{2} = \|q_{\kappa} - \gamma q_{\kappa} - (q_{\kappa})^{\perp_{\omega}}\|_{\omega}^{2} = (1 - \gamma)^{2} + \|(q_{\kappa})^{\perp_{\omega}}\|_{\omega}^{2} \le 2\|(q_{\kappa})^{\perp_{\omega}}\|_{\omega}^{2} = O\left(e^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}}\right).$$

Next, we proceed along the same line of the proof of (3.7). One can directly find that

$$-(q_{\kappa}-\beta s)''+\kappa(s)(q_{\kappa}-\beta s)=\lambda_{\kappa,1}\omega q_{\kappa},\quad (q_{\kappa}-\beta s)'\Big|_{-\frac{1}{\epsilon}}^{\frac{1}{\epsilon}}=-\beta s'\Big|_{-\frac{1}{\epsilon}}^{\frac{1}{\epsilon}}.$$

Multiplying the above equation by $q_{\kappa} - \beta s$ and integrating by parts, we have

$$\begin{split} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left| (q_{\kappa} - \beta s)' \right|^2 \mathrm{d}z &= -\int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \kappa(s) (q_{\kappa} - \beta s)^2 \mathrm{d}z + \lambda_{\kappa,1} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \omega q_{\kappa} (q_{\kappa} - \beta s) \mathrm{d}z \\ &- \beta^2 s' \Big(\frac{1}{\varepsilon}\Big) s\Big(\frac{1}{\varepsilon}\Big) + \beta^2 s' \Big(-\frac{1}{\varepsilon}\Big) s\Big(-\frac{1}{\varepsilon}\Big) \\ &= O\Big(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}}\Big). \end{split}$$

🖄 Springer

Then, (3.26) follows.

Remark 3.5 In view of the same line as in Lemmas 3.2-3.4, we can obtain the corresponding conclusions to the case without weight ω as follows:

$$\begin{split} &\int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((q_{\kappa}')^2 + \kappa(s)q_{\kappa}^2 \right) \mathrm{d}z = \inf_{\|q\|=1} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(\left(q' \right)^2 + \kappa(s)q^2 \right) \mathrm{d}z = O\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}}\right), \\ &\inf_{\|q\|=1, q \perp q_{\kappa}} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(\left(q' \right)^2 + \kappa(s)q^2 \right) \mathrm{d}z \ge C\varepsilon^2, \\ &\|q_{\kappa} - \beta_0 s\|^2 = O\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}}\right), \ \|(q_{\kappa} - \beta_0 s)'\|^2 = O\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}}\right), \ \|q_{\kappa}\| = 1, \ \beta_0 = \|s\|^{-1} \end{split}$$

Here, we omit the corresponding details.

From (3.2) and (3.11), we find that $\kappa(s)$ and q_{θ} are bounded and decay exponentially to zero at $z = +\infty$. In what follows, we fix a positive and bounded function $\omega(z)$ decaying exponentially to zero at $z = +\infty$, such that

$$|\kappa(s(z)), q_{\theta}(z), s'(z), q_{\theta}(z) - \alpha s'(z), s_{10}(z, x, t)| \le \omega(z), \quad \forall z \in (-\infty, +\infty).$$
(3.28)

3.3 Coercive Estimates of \mathcal{J}_0 and \mathcal{J}_1

Lemma 3.6 There exist two positive constants C_1, C_2 independent of small ε , such that for any $u = \gamma q_{\theta} + p_1$ and $v = \delta q_{\kappa} + p_2$ with $p_1 \perp q_{\theta}$ and $p_2 \perp_{\omega} q_{\kappa}$:

$$\int_{I_{\varepsilon}} |p_1'|^2 dz \le C_1 \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((u')^2 + \theta(s)u^2 \right) dz + C_1 e^{-\frac{C_2}{\varepsilon}} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} u^2 dz, \qquad (3.29)$$

$$\int_{I_{\epsilon}} |p_{2}'|^{2} dz \leq C_{1} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left((v')^{2} + \kappa(s)v^{2} \right) dz + C_{1} e^{-\frac{C_{2}}{\epsilon}} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} v^{2} dz.$$
(3.30)

Proof It follows from (3.5) that

$$\begin{split} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} |(p_{1})'|^{2} dz &= \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left(|(p_{1})'|^{2} + \theta(s)(p_{1})^{2} \right) dz - \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \theta(s)(p_{1})^{2} dz \\ &\leq (1 + \widetilde{C}) \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left(|(p_{1})'|^{2} + \theta(s)(p_{1})^{2} \right) dz \\ &= (1 + \widetilde{C}) \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left((u')^{2} + \theta(s)u^{2} \right) dz - \lambda_{\theta,1} (1 + \widetilde{C}) \gamma^{2} \\ &\leq C_{1} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left((u')^{2} + \theta(s)u^{2} \right) dz + C_{1} e^{-\frac{C_{2}}{\epsilon}} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} u^{2} dz. \end{split}$$

🖄 Springer
Similarly, using (3.23) and the fact that $|\kappa(s(z))| \le \omega(z)$, we have

$$\begin{split} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} |(p_2)'|^2 dz &= \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(|(p_2)'|^2 + \kappa(s)(p_2)^2 \right) dz - \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \kappa(s)(p_2)^2 dz \\ &\leq (1 + \widetilde{C}) \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(|(p_2)'|^2 + \kappa(s)(p_2)^2 \right) dz \\ &= (1 + \widetilde{C}) \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((v')^2 + \kappa(s)v^2 \right) dz - \lambda_{\kappa,1} (1 + \widetilde{C}) \delta^2 \\ &\leq C_1 \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((v')^2 + \kappa(s)v^2 \right) dz + C_1 e^{-\frac{C_2}{\varepsilon}} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} v^2 dz, \end{split}$$

which concludes the proof of the lemma.

4 The Spectral Condition of the Linearized Operator

4.1 Reduction to the Transition Region

According to the definition of the approximate solution (2.6), we have

$$\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon}_{A} \triangleq \mathbf{Q}^{[k]} = \mathbf{Q}^{(0)} + \varepsilon \mathbf{Q}^{(1)} + O(\varepsilon^{2}),$$

where

$$\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}(x,t) = \tilde{s}(z,x,t)\mathbf{E}_0(x,t),$$
(4.1)

 $\mathbf{Q}^{(1)}(x,t) = \tilde{s}_{10}(z,x,t)\mathbf{E}_0(x,t) + \tilde{s}_{11}(z,x,t)\mathbf{E}_1(x,t) + \tilde{s}_{12}(z,x,t)\mathbf{E}_2(x,t), \quad (4.2)$ in which $z = \frac{\varphi^{[k]}(x,t)}{\epsilon}$ and

$$\begin{split} \tilde{s}(z,x,t) &= \eta \left(\frac{\varphi(x,t)}{\delta}\right) s(z) + \left(1 - \eta \left(\frac{\varphi(x,t)}{\delta}\right)\right) \mathbf{1}_{\{(x,t)\in\Omega^+\}} s_+, \\ \tilde{s}_{10}(z,x,t) &= \eta \left(\frac{\varphi(x,t)}{\delta}\right) s_{10}(z,x,t), \\ \tilde{s}_{11}(z,x,t) &= \eta \left(\frac{\varphi(x,t)}{\delta}\right) s_{11}(z,x,t) + \left(1 - \eta \left(\frac{\varphi(x,t)}{\delta}\right)\right) \mathbf{1}_{\{(x,t)\in\Omega^+\}} p_{11}(x,t), \\ \tilde{s}_{12}(z,x,t) &= \eta \left(\frac{\varphi(x,t)}{\delta}\right) s_{12}(z,x,t) + \left(1 - \eta \left(\frac{\varphi(x,t)}{\delta}\right)\right) \mathbf{1}_{\{(x,t)\in\Omega^+\}} p_{12}(x,t). \end{split}$$

☑ Springer

One can directly have

$$\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}_{A}^{\varepsilon}}\mathbf{Q}:\mathbf{Q}\geq(\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}}\mathbf{Q}:\mathbf{Q})+\varepsilon(f_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}}^{\prime\prime\prime}(\mathbf{Q},\mathbf{Q}):\mathbf{Q}^{(1)})-C\varepsilon^{2}|\mathbf{Q}|^{2};$$
(4.3)

here, recall the definition of **B** and **C** in (2.7)–(2.8):

$$f_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}}^{\prime\prime}(\mathbf{Q}_1, \mathbf{Q}_2) = \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{Q}_1, \mathbf{Q}_2) + 2\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{Q}_1, \mathbf{Q}_2, \mathbf{Q}^{(0)}).$$
(4.4)

In addition, we have the following lemma.

Lemma 4.1 It holds that

$$\int_{\Omega} \left(|\nabla \mathbf{Q}|^2 + \varepsilon^{-2} (\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}_A^{\epsilon}} \mathbf{Q} : \mathbf{Q}) \right) dx$$

$$\geq \int_{\Gamma_t^{\epsilon}(\frac{\delta}{4})} \varepsilon^{-2} \left(|\nabla \mathbf{Q}|^2 + (\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}} \mathbf{Q} : \mathbf{Q}) + \varepsilon (f_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}}''(\mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{Q}) : \mathbf{Q}^{(1)}) \right) dx - C \int_{\Omega} |\mathbf{Q}|^2 dx,$$
(4.5)

where $\Gamma_t^k(\frac{\delta}{4}) = \{x : |\varphi^{[k]}(x,t)| < \frac{\delta}{4}\}$, and *C* is independent of small ε and $t \in [0,T]$.

Proof We write \mathbf{Q} as

$$\mathbf{Q} = \sum_{j=0}^{4} q_j \mathbf{E}_j$$

Using (4.1) and (4.2), direct computations lead to

$$\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}}\mathbf{Q} : \mathbf{Q} = a|\mathbf{Q}|^2 - 2b(\mathbf{Q}^{(0)} : \mathbf{Q}^2) + c(|\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}|^2|\mathbf{Q}|^2 + 2(\mathbf{Q}^{(0)} : \mathbf{Q})^2)$$

= $\frac{2}{3}\theta(\tilde{s})q_0^2 + 2\kappa(\tilde{s})(q_1^2 + q_2^2) + 2\iota(\tilde{s})(q_3^2 + q_4^2)$ (4.6)

and

$$\begin{aligned} f_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}}^{\prime\prime}(\mathbf{Q},\mathbf{Q}) &: \mathbf{Q}^{(1)} \\ &= -2b(\mathbf{Q}^{(1)} : \mathbf{Q}^2) + 2c(\mathbf{Q}^{(0)} : \mathbf{Q}^{(1)})|\mathbf{Q}|^2 + 4c(\mathbf{Q}^{(0)} : \mathbf{Q})(\mathbf{Q}^{(1)} : \mathbf{Q}) \\ &= \frac{4}{9}(-b + 6c\tilde{s})\tilde{s}_{10}q_0^2 + \frac{2}{3}(-b + 4c\tilde{s})\tilde{s}_{10}(q_1^2 + q_2^2) + \frac{4}{3}(b + 2c\tilde{s})\tilde{s}_{10}(q_3^2 + q_4^2) \\ &+ \frac{4}{3}(-b + 4c\tilde{s})q_0(\tilde{s}_{11}q_1 + \tilde{s}_{12}q_2) - 4b\tilde{s}_{11}(q_1q_4 + q_3q_2) - 4b\tilde{s}_{12}(q_1q_3 - q_4q_2). \end{aligned}$$

$$(4.7)$$

Noting that there exists a positive number C_0 , such that

$$\theta(\tilde{s}(z)) = a - \frac{2b}{3}\tilde{s}(z) + 2c\tilde{s}^2(z) \ge \frac{a}{2} > 0, \quad \text{for } |z| \ge C_0 > 0, \tag{4.8}$$

and

$$\kappa(\tilde{s}(z)) = a - \frac{b}{3}\tilde{s}(z) + \frac{2c}{3}\tilde{s}^{2}(z) = \frac{2c}{3}(s_{+} - \tilde{s}(z))\left(\frac{s_{+}}{2} - \tilde{s}(z)\right)\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \geq \frac{a}{2} > 0, \quad z \leq -C_{0} < 0;\\ \geq -Ce^{Cz}, \quad z \geq C_{0} > 0. \end{array} \right.$$

$$(4.9)$$

Therefore, for small ϵ

$$\theta(\tilde{s}(z)) \ge \frac{a}{2} > 0, \quad (x,t) \in (\Omega \times [0,T]) \backslash \Gamma^k\left(\frac{\delta}{4}\right), \tag{4.10}$$

and

$$\kappa(\tilde{s}(z)) \ge \begin{cases} \frac{a}{2} > 0, & (x,t) \in \{(x,t) : \varphi^{[k]} < 0\} \setminus \Gamma^{k}(\frac{\delta}{4}), \\ -Ce^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}}, & (x,t) \in \{(x,t) : \varphi^{[k]} > 0\} \setminus \Gamma^{k}(\frac{\delta}{4}), \end{cases}$$
(4.11)

where $\Gamma^k(\frac{\delta}{4}) = \{(x,t) : |\varphi^{[k]}(x,t)| < \frac{\delta}{4}\}.$ Thus, we obtain

$$\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}}\mathbf{Q}: \mathbf{Q} \ge \frac{2}{3}\theta(\tilde{s})q_0^2 + 2a(q_3^2 + q_4^2) - C\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}}|\mathbf{Q}|^2, \quad (x,t) \in (\Omega \times [0,T]) \setminus \Gamma^k\left(\frac{\delta}{4}\right).$$
(4.12)

Noting that for small ε

$$|\tilde{s}_{10}| \leq C e^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}}, \quad (x,t) \in (\Omega \times [0,T]) \setminus \Gamma^k \left(\frac{\delta}{4}\right);$$

then

$$\varepsilon \left(\frac{4}{9}(-b+6c\tilde{s})\tilde{s}_{10}q_0^2 + \frac{2}{3}(-b+4c\tilde{s})\tilde{s}_{10}(q_1^2+q_2^2) + \frac{4}{3}(b+2c\tilde{s})\tilde{s}_{10}(q_3^2+q_4^2)\right)$$

$$\geq -Ce^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}} \left(q_0^2+q_1^2+q_2^2+q_3^2+q_4^2\right)$$

$$\geq -Ce^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}} |\mathbf{Q}|^2, \quad (x,t) \in (\Omega \times [0,T]) \setminus \Gamma^k \left(\frac{\delta}{4}\right).$$
(4.13)

Moreover, by the Young's inequality and (4.10), we have

$$\varepsilon \left(\frac{4}{3} (-b + 4c\tilde{s}) \tilde{s}_{11} q_0 q_1 - 4b \tilde{s}_{11} q_1 q_4 - 4b \tilde{s}_{11} q_3 q_2 + \frac{4}{3} (-b + 4c\tilde{s}) \tilde{s}_{12} q_0 q_2 - 4b \tilde{s}_{12} q_1 q_3 + 4b \tilde{s}_{12} q_4 q_2 \right)$$

$$\ge -\frac{a}{6} q_0^2 - a \left(q_3^2 + q_4^2 \right) - C \varepsilon^2 \left(q_1^2 + q_2^2 \right)$$

$$\ge -\frac{1}{3} \theta(\tilde{s}) q_0^2 - a (q_3^2 + q_4^2) - C \varepsilon^2 |\mathbf{Q}|^2, \quad (x, t) \in (\Omega \times [0, T]) \setminus \Gamma^k \left(\frac{\delta}{4} \right).$$

$$(4.14)$$

Thanks to (4.7), (4.13), and (4.14), one has for small ε :

$$\varepsilon \left(f_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}}''(\mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{Q}) : \mathbf{Q}^{(1)} \right) \ge -\frac{1}{3} \theta(\tilde{s}) q_0^2 - a(q_3^2 + q_4^2) - C\varepsilon^2 |\mathbf{Q}|^2, \quad (x, t) \in (\Omega \times [0, T]) \setminus \Gamma^k \left(\frac{\delta}{4}\right).$$
(4.15)

With (4.10), (4.12), and (4.15), we arrive at for small ε and $(x, t) \in (\Omega \times [0, T]) \setminus \Gamma^k(\frac{\delta}{4})$,

$$(\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}}\mathbf{Q}:\mathbf{Q}) + \varepsilon(f_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}}''(\mathbf{Q},\mathbf{Q}):\mathbf{Q}^{(1)}) \ge \frac{a}{6}q_0^2 + a(q_3^2 + q_4^2) - C\varepsilon^2|\mathbf{Q}|^2.$$
(4.16)

Therefore, we have for $t \in [0, T]$:

$$\begin{split} &\int_{\Omega} \left(|\nabla \mathbf{Q}|^{2} + \epsilon^{-2} (\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}_{A}^{\epsilon}} \mathbf{Q} : \mathbf{Q}) \right) dx \\ &\geq \int_{\Omega} \left(|\nabla \mathbf{Q}|^{2} + \epsilon^{-2} (\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}} \mathbf{Q} : \mathbf{Q}) + \epsilon^{-1} (f_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}}''(\mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{Q}) : \mathbf{Q}^{(1)}) \right) dx - C \int_{\Omega} |\mathbf{Q}|^{2} dx \\ &= \int_{\Gamma_{i}^{k} (\frac{\delta}{4})} \left(|\nabla \mathbf{Q}|^{2} + \epsilon^{-2} (\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}} \mathbf{Q} : \mathbf{Q}) + \epsilon^{-1} (f_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}}''(\mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{Q}) : \mathbf{Q}^{(1)}) \right) dx \\ &+ \int_{\Omega \setminus \Gamma_{i}^{k} (\frac{\delta}{4})} \left(|\nabla \mathbf{Q}|^{2} + \epsilon^{-2} (\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}} \mathbf{Q} : \mathbf{Q}) + \epsilon^{-1} (f_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}}''(\mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{Q}) : \mathbf{Q}^{(1)}) \right) dx - C \int_{\Omega} |\mathbf{Q}|^{2} dx \\ &\geq \int_{\Gamma_{i}^{k} (\frac{\delta}{4})} \left(|\nabla \mathbf{Q}|^{2} + \epsilon^{-2} (\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}} \mathbf{Q} : \mathbf{Q}) + \epsilon^{-1} (f_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}}''(\mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{Q}) : \mathbf{Q}^{(1)}) \right) dx - C \int_{\Omega} |\mathbf{Q}|^{2} dx. \end{split}$$

This completes the proof of this lemma.

As a direct consequence of the above lemma, to prove Theorem 1.2, it suffices to prove a lower bound estimate independent of small ε and $t \in [0, T]$ in the phase transition region:

$$\int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}(\frac{\delta}{4})} \left(|\nabla \mathbf{Q}|^{2} + \varepsilon^{-2} (\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}}\mathbf{Q} : \mathbf{Q}) + \varepsilon^{-1} (f_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}}''(\mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{Q}) : \mathbf{Q}^{(1)}) \right) \mathrm{d}x \ge -C \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}(\frac{\delta}{4})} |\mathbf{Q}|^{2} \mathrm{d}x.$$
(4.17)

In $\Gamma^k(\delta)$, we have $\partial_z \mathbf{Q} = \sum_{j=0}^4 (\partial_z q_j \mathbf{E}_j + \partial_z q_j \partial_z \mathbf{E}_j)$, and then, direct computations lead to

$$|\partial_z \mathbf{Q}|^2 = \sum_{j=0}^4 (\partial_z q_j)^2 |\mathbf{E}_j|^2 + \mathbf{T_1} + \mathbf{T_2},$$

where

$$\begin{split} \mathbf{T_1} &= 2\sum_{i \neq j} q_j \partial_z q_i (\mathbf{E}_i : \partial_z \mathbf{E}_j) \\ &= 4q_1 \partial_z q_0 \mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{l} + 4q_0 \partial_z q_1 \mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{n} + 4q_2 \partial_z q_0 \mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{m} + 4q_0 \partial_z q_2 \mathbf{m} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{n} \\ &+ 4q_2 \partial_z q_1 \mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{m} + 4q_1 \partial_z q_2 \mathbf{m} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{l} + 4q_3 \partial_z q_1 \mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{m} + 4q_1 \partial_z q_3 \mathbf{m} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{n} \\ &+ 4q_4 \partial_z q_1 \mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{l} + 4q_1 \partial_z q_4 \mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{n} + 4q_3 \partial_z q_2 \mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{l} + 4q_2 \partial_z q_3 \mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{n} \\ &+ 4q_4 \partial_z q_2 \mathbf{m} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{n} + 4q_2 \partial_z q_4 \mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{m} + 8q_3 \partial_z q_4 \mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{m} + 8q_4 \partial_z q_3 \mathbf{m} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{l}, \end{split}$$

Due to Lemma 2.4, we may assume that $\varphi^{[k]}(x,t)$ is the signed distance to $\Gamma_t^k = \{x : \varphi^{[k]}(x,t) = 0\}$ for $k \ge 1$ without loss of generality. And let $\sigma(x,t)$ be the projection of x on Γ_t^k along the normal of Γ_t^k . Then, the transformation $x \mapsto (\varphi^{[k]}(x,t), \sigma(x,t))$ is a diffeomorphism for small δ and $t \in [0, T]$. Let $J(\varphi^{[k]}, \sigma) = \det \frac{\partial x^{-1}(\varphi^{[k]}, \sigma)}{\partial (\varphi^{[k]}, \sigma)}$ be the Jacobian of the transformation. Then, $J|_{\Gamma_t^k} = 1$ and $\frac{\partial J}{\partial q^{[k]}}|_{\Gamma_t^k} = 0$. Thus

$$0 < C_1 \le J(\varphi^{[k]}, \sigma) \le C_2, \quad \left| J_{\varphi^{[k]}}(\varphi^{[k]}, \sigma) \triangleq \frac{\partial J}{\partial \varphi^{[k]}}(\varphi^{[k]}, \sigma) \right| \le C \left| \varphi^{[k]} \right|.$$
(4.18)

As δ is a small fixed positive constant, for convenience, we assume $\delta = 4$ in what follows. Thus, one has for $t \in [0, T]$:

$$\begin{split} &\int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}(\frac{\delta}{4})} \varepsilon^{-2} \Big(|\partial_{z} \mathbf{Q}|^{2} + (\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}} \mathbf{Q} : \mathbf{Q}) + \varepsilon(f_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}}''(\mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{Q}) : \mathbf{Q}^{(1)}) \Big) \mathrm{d}x \\ &= \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}(1)} \varepsilon^{-2} \Big(|\partial_{z} \mathbf{Q}|^{2} + (\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}} \mathbf{Q} : \mathbf{Q}) + \varepsilon(f_{\mathbf{Q}^{(0)}}''(\mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{Q}) : \mathbf{Q}^{(1)}) \Big) \mathrm{d}x \\ &\geq \varepsilon \Big(\mathfrak{M}_{G} + \mathfrak{M}_{M} + \mathfrak{M}_{B} \Big), \end{split}$$
(4.19)

where \mathfrak{M}_G is the collection of "good terms" which contain q_3 and q_4 :

$$\mathfrak{M}_{G} \triangleq 2\varepsilon^{-2} \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((\partial_{z}q_{3})^{2} + \iota(s)q_{3}^{2} + (\partial_{z}q_{4})^{2} + \iota(s)q_{4}^{2} \right) J(\varepsilon z, \sigma) dz + 2\varepsilon^{-1} \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(\frac{2b}{3} + \frac{4c}{3}s \right) s_{10}(q_{3}^{2} + q_{4}^{2}) J(\varepsilon z, \sigma) dz - 4b\varepsilon^{-1} \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((q_{1}q_{4} + q_{3}q_{2})s_{11} + (q_{1}q_{3} - q_{4}q_{2})s_{12} \right) J(\varepsilon z, \sigma) dz + 4\varepsilon^{-2} \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(q_{3}\partial_{z}q_{1} + q_{2}\partial_{z}q_{4})\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m} + (q_{4}\partial_{z}q_{1} + q_{3}\partial_{z}q_{2})\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{l} \right) J(\varepsilon z, \sigma) dz + 4\varepsilon^{-2} \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{\kappa}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((q_{4}\partial_{z}q_{2} + q_{1}\partial_{z}q_{3})\mathbf{m} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{n} + (q_{1}\partial_{z}q_{4} + q_{2}\partial_{z}q_{3})\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{n} \right) J(\varepsilon z, \sigma) dz + 8\varepsilon^{-2} \int_{\Gamma^{\kappa}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(q_{3}\partial_{z}q_{4}\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m} + q_{4}\partial_{z}q_{3}\mathbf{m} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{l} \right) J(\varepsilon z, \sigma) dz;$$

$$(4.20)$$

 \mathfrak{M}_{M} represents "mild terms" like $q_{i}\partial_{z}q_{j}$ (i, j = 0, 1, 2):

$$\mathfrak{M}_{M} \triangleq 4\varepsilon^{-2} \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} (q_{1}\partial_{z}q_{0}\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{l} + q_{0}\partial_{z}q_{1}\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{n}) J(\varepsilon z, \sigma) dz + 4\varepsilon^{-2} \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} (q_{2}\partial_{z}q_{0}\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m} + q_{0}\partial_{z}q_{2}\mathbf{m} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{n}) J(\varepsilon z, \sigma) dz$$
(4.21)
+ $4\varepsilon^{-2} \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} (q_{2}\partial_{z}q_{1}\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m} + q_{1}\partial_{z}q_{2}\mathbf{m} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{l}) J(\varepsilon z, \sigma) dz;$

 \mathfrak{M}_{B} contains "bad terms" given by

$$\mathfrak{M}_{B} \triangleq \frac{2}{3} \varepsilon^{-2} \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((\partial_{z}q_{0})^{2} + \theta(s)q_{0}^{2} \right) J(\varepsilon z, \sigma) dz + 2\varepsilon^{-2} \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((\partial_{z}q_{1})^{2} + \kappa(s)q_{1}^{2} + (\partial_{z}q_{2})^{2} + \kappa(s)q_{2}^{2} \right) J(\varepsilon z, \sigma) dz + \frac{2}{3} \varepsilon^{-1} \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(\theta'(s)s_{10}q_{0}^{2} + 3\kappa'(s)s_{10}(q_{1}^{2} + q_{2}^{2}) + 6\kappa'(s)q_{0}(q_{1}s_{11} + q_{2}s_{12}) \right) J(\varepsilon z, \sigma) dz.$$

$$(4.22)$$

In the following lemma, we deal with the integral with Jacobian. The method here is different from (2.14) in [8].

Lemma 4.2 Given a function $u = u(z, \sigma)$ defined in $(-\frac{1}{\varepsilon}, \frac{1}{\varepsilon}) \times \Gamma^k$, we have

$$\int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((\partial_{z} u)^{2} + \theta(s) u^{2} \right) J(\varepsilon z, \sigma) \mathrm{d}z \ge \frac{3}{4} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((\partial_{z} \hat{u})^{2} + \theta(s) \hat{u}^{2} \right) \mathrm{d}z - C\varepsilon^{2} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} u^{2} \mathrm{d}z,$$

$$(4.23)$$

$$\int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((\partial_{z} u)^{2} + \kappa(s) u^{2} \right) J(\varepsilon z, \sigma) \mathrm{d}z \ge \frac{3}{4} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((\partial_{z} \hat{u})^{2} + \kappa(s) \hat{u}^{2} \right) \mathrm{d}z - C \varepsilon^{2} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} u^{2} \mathrm{d}z,$$

$$(4.24)$$

where $\hat{u} = uJ^{\frac{1}{2}}$ and *C* is a constant independent of small ε and *u*.

Proof First, we can observe that

$$\int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((\partial_z u)^2 + \theta(s) u^2 \right) J dz \ge \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((\partial_z \hat{u})^2 + \theta(s) \hat{u}^2 \right) dz - \varepsilon \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \hat{u} \partial_z \hat{u} J_d J^{-1} dz - C \varepsilon^2 \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} u^2 dz.$$

$$(4.25)$$

Let $\hat{u} = \gamma q_{\theta} + p_1$, then

$$-\varepsilon \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \hat{u} \partial_{z} \hat{u} J_{d} J^{-1} dz = -\varepsilon \gamma \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \hat{u} q_{\theta}' J_{d} J^{-1} dz - \varepsilon \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \hat{u} \partial_{z} p_{1} J_{d} J^{-1} dz$$
$$= -\varepsilon \gamma \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \hat{u} (q_{\theta} - \alpha s')' J_{d} J^{-1} dz + \varepsilon \alpha \gamma \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \hat{u} s'' J_{d} J^{-1} dz - \varepsilon \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \hat{u} \partial_{z} p_{1} J_{d} J^{-1} dz.$$

By (3.7), we get

$$\begin{split} \epsilon \gamma \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{u}(q_{\theta} - \alpha s')' J_{d} J^{-1} \mathrm{d}z &\leq C \epsilon \gamma \bigg(\int_{I_{\epsilon}} |\hat{u}|^{2} \mathrm{d}z \bigg)^{\frac{1}{2}} \bigg(\int_{I_{\epsilon}} |(q_{\theta} - \alpha s')'|^{2} \mathrm{d}z \bigg)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &\leq O \bigg(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}} \bigg) \bigg(\int_{I_{\epsilon}} |\hat{u}|^{2} \mathrm{d}z \bigg) \leq O \bigg(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}} \bigg) \int_{I_{\epsilon}} u^{2} \mathrm{d}z, \end{split}$$

and

$$\begin{split} \varepsilon \alpha \gamma \bigg| \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \hat{u} s'' J_d J^{-1} dz \bigg| &\leq C \varepsilon^2 \alpha \gamma \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} |\hat{u} s'' z| dz \\ &\leq C \varepsilon^2 \alpha \gamma \bigg(\int_{I_{\varepsilon}} |\hat{u}|^2 dz \bigg)^{\frac{1}{2}} \bigg(\int_{I_{\varepsilon}} |s'' z|^2 dz \bigg)^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq C \varepsilon^2 \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} u^2 dz. \end{split}$$

Moreover, by (3.29) and the Young's inequality, one has

$$\begin{aligned} \left| -\varepsilon \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \hat{u} \partial_{z} p_{1} J_{d} J^{-1} dz \right| &\leq C\varepsilon \left(\int_{I_{\varepsilon}} u^{2} dz \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\int_{I_{\varepsilon}} (\partial_{z} p_{1})^{2} dz \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &\leq C\varepsilon^{2} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} u^{2} dz + \frac{1}{4} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((\partial_{z} \hat{u})^{2} + \theta(s) \hat{u}^{2} \right) dz. \end{aligned}$$

This gives

$$-\varepsilon \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \hat{u} \partial_{z} \hat{u} J_{d} J^{-1} \mathrm{d}z \geq -C\varepsilon^{2} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} u^{2} \mathrm{d}z - \frac{1}{4} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((\partial_{z} \hat{u})^{2} + \theta(s) \hat{u}^{2} \right) \mathrm{d}z.$$

which together with (4.25) leads to (4.23). The proof of (4.24) is similar.

4.2 Estimates of \mathfrak{M}_{G}

In this subsection, we deal with the "good terms" defined in (4.20). In this and next two subsections, we define $\hat{q}_j = q_j J^{\frac{1}{2}}$ ($0 \le j \le 4$), and assume the decompositions:

$$\hat{q}_0 = \gamma q_\theta + p_0, \quad \hat{q}_1 = \delta q_\kappa + p_1, \quad \hat{q}_2 = \mu q_\kappa + p_2,$$
(4.26)

and here, $p_0 \perp q_\theta$ and $p_1, p_2 \perp_{\omega} q_{\kappa}$. Then, $\|\hat{q}_0\|^2 = \gamma^2 + \|p_0\|^2$, $\|\hat{q}_1\|_{\omega}^2 = \delta^2 + \|p_1\|_{\omega}^2$ and $\|\hat{q}_2\|_{\omega}^2 = \mu^2 + \|p_2\|_{\omega}^2$.

In addition, we easily get $\partial_z \mathbf{n} = \varepsilon \partial_{\omega^{[k]}} \mathbf{n} = O(\varepsilon)$. Similarly,

$$|\partial_z(\mathbf{l}, \mathbf{m})| = O(\varepsilon). \tag{4.27}$$

Moreover, noting that $\partial_{\nabla \varphi} \mathbf{n} |_{\varphi=0} = 0$ (homogeneous Neumann boundary condition in (1.4)), one has

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_{z} \mathbf{n} &= \varepsilon \partial_{\varphi^{[k]}} \mathbf{n} = \varepsilon \partial_{\varphi^{[k]}} \mathbf{n} |_{\varphi_{k}=0} + O(1) \varepsilon \varphi^{[k]} \\ &= \varepsilon \partial_{\varphi} \mathbf{n} |_{\varphi=-\sum_{i=1}^{k} \varepsilon^{i} \varphi^{(i)}} + O(\varepsilon^{2}) z \\ &= \varepsilon \partial_{\varphi} \mathbf{n} |_{\varphi=0} - O(1) \left(\sum_{i=1}^{k} \varepsilon^{i+1} \varphi^{(i)} \right) + O(\varepsilon^{2}) z \\ &\leq O(\varepsilon^{2})(|z|+1), \end{aligned}$$

which further implies that

$$|(\partial_{z}\mathbf{l}\cdot\mathbf{n})(z)| = |(\partial_{z}\mathbf{n}\cdot\mathbf{l})(z)| \le C\varepsilon^{2}(|z|+1), \quad |(\partial_{z}\mathbf{m}\cdot\mathbf{n})(z)| = |(\partial_{z}\mathbf{n}\cdot\mathbf{m})(z)| \le C\varepsilon^{2}(|z|+1).$$
(4.28)

Now, we start to estimate \mathfrak{M}_G . Due to the decomposition \hat{q}_1 , (4.28) and the Young's inequality, we infer that, for small ϵ :

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} q_{3}\partial_{z}q_{1}\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}J\mathrm{d}z &= \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{3}\partial_{z}\hat{q}_{1}\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}\mathrm{d}z - \frac{\varepsilon}{2} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{3}\hat{q}_{1}J^{-1}J_{\varphi^{[k]}}\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}\mathrm{d}z \\ &= \delta \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{3}(q_{\kappa})'\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}\mathrm{d}z + \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{3}\partial_{z}p_{1}\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}\mathrm{d}z + O(\varepsilon^{2})\|q_{3}\|\|q_{1}\| \\ &\leq O(\varepsilon)\|q_{3}\|\|q_{1}\| + O(\varepsilon)\|q_{3}\|^{2} + O(\varepsilon)\|\partial_{z}p_{1}\|^{2} + O(\varepsilon^{2})\|q_{3}\|\|q_{1}\| \\ &\leq O(\varepsilon^{2})\|q_{1}\|^{2} + \frac{a}{32}\|q_{3}\|^{2} + O(\varepsilon)\|\partial_{z}p_{1}\|^{2}. \end{aligned}$$

$$(4.29)$$

According to similar arguments, we have, for small ϵ :

$$\begin{split} &\int_{I_{\epsilon}} q_4 \partial_z q_1 \mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{I} J \mathrm{d}z \ \leq O(\epsilon^2) \|q_1\|^2 + \frac{a}{32} \|q_4\|^2 + O(\epsilon) \|\partial_z p_1\|^2, \\ &\int_{I_{\epsilon}} q_3 \partial_z q_2 \mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{I} J \mathrm{d}z \ \leq O(\epsilon^2) \|q_2\|^2 + \frac{a}{32} \|q_3\|^2 + O(\epsilon) \|\partial_z p_2\|^2, \\ &\int_{I_{\epsilon}} q_4 \partial_z q_2 \mathbf{m} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{n} J \mathrm{d}z \ \leq O(\epsilon^2) \|q_2\|^2 + \frac{a}{32} \|q_4\|^2 + O(\epsilon) \|\partial_z p_2\|^2. \end{split}$$

Therefore, for small ε , we have

$$\int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left(q_3 \partial_z q_1 \mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{m} + q_4 \partial_z q_1 \mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{l} + q_3 \partial_z q_2 \mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{l} + q_4 \partial_z q_2 \mathbf{m} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{n} \right) J dz$$

$$\leq O(\epsilon^2) (\|q_1\|^2 + \|q_2\|^2) + \frac{a}{16} (\|q_3\|^2 + \|q_4\|^2) + O(\epsilon) (\|\partial_z p_1\|^2 + \|\partial_z p_2\|^2).$$
(4.30)

Furthermore, we easily see that for small ϵ

$$2\int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left(\frac{2b}{3} + \frac{4c}{3}s\right) s_{10}(q_3^2 + q_4^2) J(\epsilon z, \sigma) dz - 4b \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left(\left(q_1q_4 + q_3q_2\right)s_{11} + \left(q_1q_3 - q_4q_2\right)s_{12}\right) J dz$$

$$\leq O(\epsilon) (\|q_1\|^2 + \|q_2\|^2) + \frac{a}{16}\epsilon^{-1} (\|q_3\|^2 + \|q_4\|^2),$$
(4.31)

and

$$\int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left(q_1 \partial_z q_3 \mathbf{m} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{n} + q_1 \partial_z q_4 \mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{n} + q_2 \partial_z q_3 \mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{n} + q_2 \partial_z q_4 \mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{m} \right) J dz$$

$$\leq O(\epsilon^2) \left(\|q_1\|^2 + \|q_2\|^2 \right) + \frac{1}{16} \left(\|\partial_z q_3\|^2 + \|\partial_z q_4\|^2 \right),$$
(4.32)

and

$$\int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(q_3 \partial_z q_4 \mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{m} + q_4 \partial_z q_3 \mathbf{m} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{l} \right) J \mathrm{d}z \le O(\varepsilon) \left(\|q_3\|^2 + \|q_4\|^2 \right) + O(\varepsilon) \left(\|\partial_z q_3\|^2 + \|\partial_z q_4\|^2 \right).$$

$$(4.33)$$

Combining (4.30)–(4.33) with (3.30), we immediately find that, for small ε and $t \in [0, T]$:

$$\mathfrak{M}_{G} \geq -C \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} \mathrm{d}\sigma \int_{I_{\epsilon}} (q_{1}^{2} + q_{2}^{2}) J \mathrm{d}z - \frac{\epsilon^{-2}}{4} \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} \mathrm{d}\sigma \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left((\partial_{z} \hat{q}_{1})^{2} + \kappa(s) \hat{q}_{1}^{2} + (\partial_{z} \hat{q}_{2})^{2} + \kappa(s) \hat{q}_{2}^{2} \right) \mathrm{d}z.$$
(4.34)

4.3 Estimates of \mathfrak{M}_M

In this subsection, we deal with the "mild terms" defined in (4.21).

<u>Step 1</u>. Due to the decomposition of \hat{q}_0 and \hat{q}_1 , (3.7), (4.18), (4.28), and the Young's inequality, we deduce that

$$\begin{split} &\int_{I_{\epsilon}} q_{1}\partial_{z}q_{0}\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{I}Jdz \\ &= \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{1}\partial_{z}\hat{q}_{0}\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{I}dz - \frac{\varepsilon}{2} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{1}\hat{q}_{0}J^{-1}J_{\varphi}\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{I}dz \\ &= \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{1}\left(\gamma q_{\theta}' + \partial_{z}p_{0}\right)\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{I}dz + O(\varepsilon^{2})||q_{0}|| ||q_{1}|| \\ &= \gamma \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{1}q_{\theta}'\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{I}Jdz + \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{1}\partial_{z}p_{0}\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{I}Jdz + O(\varepsilon^{2})||q_{0}|| ||q_{1}|| \\ &= \gamma \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{1}(q_{\theta} - \alpha s')'\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{I}Jdz + \gamma \alpha \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{1}s''\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{I}Jdz + \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{1}\partial_{z}p_{0}\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{I}Jdz + O(\varepsilon^{2})||q_{0}|| ||q_{1}|| \\ &\leq O\left(\mathbf{e}^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}}\right)||q_{0}|| ||q_{1}|| + O(\varepsilon^{2})||q_{0}|| ||q_{1}|| + O(\varepsilon^{2})||q_{1}||^{2} + \frac{1}{32C_{1}}||\partial_{z}p_{0}||^{2}, \end{split}$$

and

$$\begin{split} &\int_{I_{\epsilon}} q_{0}\partial_{z}q_{1}\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{n}Jdz \\ &= \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{0}\partial_{z}\hat{q}_{1}\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{n}dz - \frac{\varepsilon}{2} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{1}\hat{q}_{0}J^{-1}J_{\varphi}\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{n}dz \\ &= \delta \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{0}(q_{\kappa})'\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{n}dz + \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{0}\partial_{z}p_{1}\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{n}dz + O(\varepsilon^{2})||q_{0}||||q_{1}|| \\ &= \delta \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{0}(q_{\kappa} - \beta s)'\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{n}dz + \delta\beta \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{0}s'\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{n}dz + \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{0}\partial_{z}p_{1}\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{n}dz + O(\varepsilon^{2})||q_{0}|||q_{1}|| \\ &\leq O\left(e^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}}\right)||q_{0}||||q_{1}|| + O(\varepsilon^{2})||q_{0}|||q_{1}|| + O(\varepsilon^{2})||q_{0}||^{2} + \frac{1}{32C_{1}}||\partial_{z}p_{1}||^{2}. \end{split}$$

$$(4.36)$$

Here, C_1 is defined in Lemma 3.6, and we have used the following observations:

$$\begin{split} \left| \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{1} s'' \mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z} \mathbf{l} dz \right| &\leq C \varepsilon^{2} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left| \hat{q}_{1} s''(|z|+1) \right| dz \\ &\leq C \varepsilon^{2} \bigg(\int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left| \hat{q}_{1} \right|^{2} dz \bigg)^{\frac{1}{2}} \bigg(\int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left| s''(|z|+1) \right|^{2} dz \bigg)^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq C \varepsilon^{2} \bigg(\int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left| \hat{q}_{1} \right|^{2} dz \bigg)^{\frac{1}{2}}, \\ \left| \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{0} s' \mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z} \mathbf{n} dz \right| \leq C \varepsilon^{2} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left| \hat{q}_{0} s'(|z|+1) \right| dz \\ &\leq C \varepsilon^{2} \bigg(\int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left| \hat{q}_{0} \right|^{2} dz \bigg)^{\frac{1}{2}} \bigg(\int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left| s'(|z|+1) \right|^{2} dz \bigg)^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq C \varepsilon^{2} \bigg(\int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left| \hat{q}_{0} \right|^{2} dz \bigg)^{\frac{1}{2}}. \end{split}$$

 $\underline{\textcircled{O}}$ Springer

By (4.35) and (4.36), we get

$$\begin{split} &\int_{I_{\epsilon}} q_{1}\partial_{z}q_{0}\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{l}Jdz + \int_{I_{\epsilon}} q_{0}\partial_{z}q_{1}\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{n}Jdz \\ &\leq O\Big(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}}\Big)\|q_{0}\|\|q_{1}\| + O(\epsilon^{2})\Big(\|q_{0}\|^{2} + \|q_{1}\|^{2}\Big) + \frac{1}{32C_{1}}\Big(\|\partial_{z}p_{0}\|^{2} + \|\partial_{z}p_{1}\|^{2}\Big). \end{split}$$
(4.37)

Similarly, there holds

$$\int_{I_{\epsilon}} q_{2}\partial_{z}q_{0}\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}Jdz + \int_{I_{\epsilon}} q_{0}\partial_{z}q_{2}\mathbf{m} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{n}Jdz \leq O\left(e^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}}\right) \|q_{0}\| \|q_{2}\| + O(\epsilon^{2})\left(\|q_{0}\|^{2} + \|q_{2}\|^{2}\right) + \frac{1}{32C_{1}}\left(\|\partial_{z}p_{0}\|^{2} + \|\partial_{z}p_{2}\|^{2}\right).$$
(4.38)

Step 2. Due to the decomposition \hat{q}_1 , (3.23), (3.26), (4.27), and the Young inequality, we have

$$\begin{split} &\int_{I_{\epsilon}} q_{2}\partial_{z}q_{1}\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}Jdz \\ &= \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{2}\partial_{z}\hat{q}_{1}\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}dz - \frac{\epsilon}{2}\int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{2}\hat{q}_{1}J^{-1}J_{\varphi}\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}dz \\ &= \delta\int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{2}(q_{\kappa})'\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}dz + \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{2}\partial_{z}p_{1}\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}dz + O(\epsilon^{2})\|q_{2}\|\|q_{1}\| \\ &= \delta\int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{2}(q_{\kappa} - \beta s)'\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}dz + \delta\beta\int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{2}s'\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}dz + \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{2}\partial_{z}p_{1}\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}dz + O(\epsilon^{2})\|q_{2}\|\|q_{1}\| \\ &\leq O\left(e^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}}\right)\|\hat{q}_{1}\|\|\hat{q}_{2}\| + \delta\beta\int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{2}s'\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}dz + O(\epsilon^{2})\|q_{2}\|^{2} + \frac{1}{64C_{1}}\|\partial_{z}p_{1}\|^{2}, \end{split}$$

$$(4.39)$$

and

$$\delta\beta \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \hat{q}_{2}s'\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}dz$$

$$= \delta\beta \int_{I_{\epsilon}} (\mu q_{\kappa} + p_{2})s'\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}dz$$

$$= \mu\delta\beta \int_{I_{\epsilon}} (q_{\kappa} - \beta s)s'\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}dz + \mu\delta\beta^{2} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} ss'\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}dz + \delta\beta \int_{I_{\epsilon}} p_{2}s'\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}dz$$

$$\leq O(e^{-\frac{c}{\epsilon}}) \|q_{1}\| \|q_{2}\| + \mu\delta\beta^{2} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} ss'\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}dz + O(\epsilon^{2}) \|q_{1}\|^{2} + \frac{1}{64C_{1}} \|\partial_{z}p_{2}\|^{2}.$$
(4.40)

D Springer

Consequently, we arrive at

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} q_{2}\partial_{z}q_{1}\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}Jdz &\leq O(e^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}})\|q_{1}\|\|q_{2}\| + O(\epsilon^{2})\big(\|q_{1}\|^{2} + \|q_{2}\|^{2}\big) + \frac{1}{64C_{1}}\big(\|\partial_{z}p_{1}\|^{2} + \|\partial_{z}p_{2}\|^{2}\big) \\ &+ \mu\delta\beta^{2}\int_{I_{\epsilon}} ss'\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}dz. \end{aligned}$$
(4.41)

Similarly, we can deduce that

$$\int_{I_{\epsilon}} q_1 \partial_z q_2 \mathbf{m} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{I} J dz \leq O(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}}) \|q_1\| \|q_2\| + O(\epsilon^2) (\|q_1\|^2 + |q_2\|^2) + \frac{1}{64C_1} (\|\partial_z p_1\|^2 + \|\partial_z p_2\|^2)$$

$$+ \mu \delta \beta^2 \int_{I_{\epsilon}} ss' \mathbf{m} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{I} dz.$$
(4.42)

Combining (4.41) with (4.42), we get

$$\begin{split} &\int_{I_{\varepsilon}} q_{2}\partial_{z}q_{1}\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{m}J\mathrm{d}z + \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} q_{1}\partial_{z}q_{2}\mathbf{m} \cdot \partial_{z}\mathbf{l}\mathrm{d}z \\ &\leq O(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}})\|q_{1}\|\|q_{2}\| + O(\varepsilon^{2})\big(\|q_{1}\|^{2} + |q_{2}|\|^{2}\big) + \frac{1}{64C_{1}}\big(\|\partial_{z}p_{1}\|^{2} + \|\partial_{z}p_{2}\|^{2}\big), \end{split}$$

$$\tag{4.43}$$

and here, we have used the fact $\mathbf{l} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{m} + \mathbf{m} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{l} = \partial_z (\mathbf{l} \cdot \mathbf{m}) = 0$.

In conclusion, with the help of (3.29)–(3.30), we have for small ε and $t \in [0, T]$

$$\mathfrak{M}_{M} \geq -C \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(q_{0}^{2} + q_{1}^{2} + q_{2}^{2} \right) J dz - \frac{1}{4} \varepsilon^{-2} \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((\partial_{z} \hat{q}_{0})^{2} + \theta(s) \hat{q}_{0}^{2} \right) dz - \frac{1}{4} \varepsilon^{-2} \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left((\partial_{z} \hat{q}_{1})^{2} + \kappa(s) \hat{q}_{1}^{2} + (\partial_{z} \hat{q}_{2})^{2} + \kappa(s) \hat{q}_{2}^{2} \right) dz.$$

$$(4.44)$$

4.4 Estimates of \mathfrak{M}_B

In this subsection, we deal with the "bad terms" defined in (4.22). Based on (4.23), (4.24), (4.34), and (4.44), one has, for small ε and $t \in [0, T]$:

$$\begin{split} \mathfrak{M}_{G} + \mathfrak{M}_{M} + \mathfrak{M}_{B} \\ &\geq \frac{1}{4} \varepsilon^{-2} \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left((\partial_{z} \hat{q}_{0})^{2} + \theta(s) \hat{q}_{0}^{2} \right) dz + \varepsilon^{-2} \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left((\partial_{z} \hat{q}_{1})^{2} + \kappa(s) \hat{q}_{1}^{2} \right) dz \\ &+ \varepsilon^{-2} \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left((\partial_{z} \hat{q}_{2})^{2} + \kappa(s) \hat{q}_{2}^{2} \right) dz + \frac{2}{3} \varepsilon^{-1} \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \theta'(s) s_{10} \hat{q}_{0}^{2} dz \\ &+ 2\varepsilon^{-1} \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \kappa'(s) s_{10} \left(\hat{q}_{1}^{2} + \hat{q}_{2}^{2} \right) dz + 4\varepsilon^{-1} \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \kappa'(s) \hat{q}_{0} \left(\hat{q}_{1} s_{11} + \hat{q}_{2} s_{12} \right) dz \\ &- C \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left(q_{0}^{2} + q_{1}^{2} + q_{2}^{2} \right) J dz \\ &\triangleq \varepsilon^{-2} (\mathfrak{B}_{1} + \mathfrak{B}_{2} + \dots + \mathfrak{B}_{8}) - C \int_{\Gamma_{t}^{k}} d\sigma \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left(q_{0}^{2} + q_{1}^{2} + q_{2}^{2} \right) J dz. \end{split}$$

$$(4.45)$$

To proceed, we first establish the following conclusions.

Lemma 4.3 For $(x, t) \in \Gamma^k(1)$, we have

$$\int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \theta'(s(z)) s_{10}(z, x, t) (s'(z))^2 dz = O(\varepsilon), \quad \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \kappa'(s(z)) s_{10}(z, x, t) s^2(z) dz = O(\varepsilon),$$
(4.46)

$$\int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \kappa'(s(z))s'(z)s(z)s_{11}(z,x,t)\mathrm{d}z = O(\varepsilon), \quad \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \kappa'(s(z))s'(z)s(z)s_{12}(z,x,t)\mathrm{d}z = O(\varepsilon).$$
(4.47)

Proof We only prove (4.46). The remaining results can be proved similarly. For $(x, t) \in \Gamma^k(1) \subset \Gamma(2)$, as $|\nabla_x s_{10}(z, x, t)| \leq C$, there holds

$$|s_{10}(z, x, t) - s_{10}(z, \sigma(x), t)| \le C|x - \sigma(x)| \le C\varepsilon |z|.$$

Then, it follows from (6.14) that

$$\begin{split} & \left| \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \theta'(s(z)) s_{10}(z, x, t) (s'(z))^{2} dz \right| \\ &= \left| \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \theta'(s(z)) \left(s_{10}(z, x, t) - s_{10}(z, \sigma(x), t) \right) (s'(z))^{2} dz \right. \\ & \left. - \int_{\frac{1}{\epsilon}}^{+\infty} \theta'(s(z)) s_{10}(z, \sigma(x), t) (s'(z))^{2} dz - \int_{-\infty}^{-\frac{1}{\epsilon}} \theta'(s(z)) s_{10}(z, \sigma(x), t) (s'(z))^{2} dz \right| \\ &\leq \epsilon \int_{I_{\epsilon}} |\theta'(s(z))| |z| (s'(z))^{2} dz + \left(\int_{\frac{1}{\epsilon}}^{+\infty} + \int_{-\infty}^{-\frac{1}{\epsilon}} \right) |\theta'(s(z)) s_{10}(z, \sigma(x), t)| (s'(z))^{2} dz \\ &\leq C\epsilon. \end{split}$$

Description Springer

Using the similar arguments, we get

$$\begin{split} & \left| \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \kappa'(s(z)) s_{10}(z,x,t) s^{2}(z) \mathrm{d}z \right| \\ & \leq C \varepsilon \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} |\kappa'(s(z))z| s^{2}(z) \mathrm{d}z + \left(\int_{\frac{1}{\varepsilon}}^{+\infty} + \int_{-\infty}^{-\frac{1}{\varepsilon}} \right) |\kappa'(s(z))s_{10}(z,\sigma(x),t)| s^{2}(z) \mathrm{d}z \\ & \leq C \varepsilon. \end{split}$$

Hence, this Lemma is proved.

Due to the decomposition of \hat{q}_0 , (3.4), (3.5), (6.14) and the Young's inequality, we infer that for small ϵ

$$\mathfrak{B}_{1} + \mathfrak{B}_{4} = \frac{1}{4}\gamma^{2} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left(\left(q_{\theta}'\right)^{2} + \theta(s)q_{\theta}^{2} \right) dz + \frac{1}{4} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left((\partial_{z}p_{0})^{2} + \theta(s)p_{0}^{2} \right) dz. \\ + \frac{2}{3}\varepsilon\gamma^{2} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \theta'(s)s_{10}q_{\theta}^{2} dz + \frac{4}{3}\varepsilon\gamma \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \theta'(s)s_{10}q_{\theta}p_{0}dz + \frac{2}{3}\varepsilon \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \theta'(s)s_{10}p_{0}^{2} dz \\ \geq \frac{1}{4}\gamma^{2}\lambda_{\theta,1} + \frac{1}{4}\lambda_{\theta,2} \|p_{0}\|^{2} + \frac{2}{3}\varepsilon\gamma^{2}\alpha^{2} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \theta'(s)s_{10}(s')^{2} dz \\ + O(e^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}})\gamma^{2} + O(\varepsilon)\|p_{0}\|\gamma + O(\varepsilon)\|p_{0}\|^{2} \\ = \frac{1}{4}\gamma^{2}\lambda_{\theta,1} + \frac{1}{4}\lambda_{\theta,2} \|p_{0}\|^{2} + O(e^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}})\gamma^{2} + O(\varepsilon)\gamma\|p_{0}\| + O(\varepsilon)\|p_{0}\|^{2} \\ \geq \left(\frac{1}{4}\lambda_{\theta,1} + O(e^{-\frac{C}{\epsilon}}) + O(\varepsilon^{2})\right)\gamma^{2} + \frac{1}{8}\lambda_{\theta,2} \|p_{0}\|^{2} \\ \geq -C\varepsilon^{2}\gamma^{2} + \frac{1}{8}\lambda_{\theta,2} \|p_{1}\|^{2} \\ \geq -C\varepsilon^{2}\int_{I_{\epsilon}} q_{1}^{2}Jdz + \frac{1}{8}\lambda_{\theta,2} \|p_{0}\|^{2}.$$

$$(4.48)$$

Due to the decomposition of \hat{q}_1 , (3.19), (3.23), (6.14), and the Young inequality, we deduce that, for small ϵ :

$$\begin{split} \mathfrak{B}_{2} + \mathfrak{B}_{5} &= \delta^{2} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left(\left((q_{\kappa})' \right)^{2} + \kappa(s)(q_{\kappa})^{2} \right) dz + \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \left((\partial_{\varepsilon} p_{1})^{2} + \kappa(s)p_{1}^{2} \right) dz. \\ &+ 2\varepsilon \delta^{2} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \kappa'(s)s_{10}(q_{\kappa})^{2} dz + 4\varepsilon \delta \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \kappa'(s)s_{10}q_{\kappa}p_{1} dz + 2\varepsilon \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \kappa'(s)s_{10}p_{1}^{2} dz \\ &\geq \delta^{2}\lambda_{\kappa,1} + \lambda_{\kappa,2} \|p_{1}\|_{\omega}^{2} + 2\varepsilon \delta^{2}\beta^{2} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \kappa'(s)s_{10}s^{2} dz + O(e^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}})\delta^{2} + O(\varepsilon)\delta \|p_{1}\|_{\omega} + O(\varepsilon) \|p_{1}\|_{\omega}^{2} \\ &= \delta^{2}\lambda_{\kappa,1} + \lambda_{\kappa,2} \|p_{1}\|_{\omega}^{2} + O(e^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}})\delta^{2} + O(\varepsilon)\delta \|p_{1}\| + O(\varepsilon) \|p_{1}\|_{\omega}^{2} \\ &\geq -C\varepsilon^{2}\delta^{2} + \frac{1}{2}\lambda_{\kappa,2} \|p_{1}\|_{\omega}^{2} \\ &\geq -C\varepsilon^{2} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} q_{1}^{2} J dz + \frac{1}{2}\lambda_{\kappa,2} \|p_{1}\|_{\omega}^{2}. \end{split}$$

$$(4.49)$$

191

 $\underline{\textcircled{O}}$ Springer

Similarly, for small ε , we have

$$\mathfrak{B}_{3} + \mathfrak{B}_{6} \ge -C\varepsilon^{2} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} q_{2}^{2} J \mathrm{d}z + \frac{1}{2} \lambda_{\kappa,2} \|p_{2}\|_{\omega}^{2}.$$

$$(4.50)$$

Finally, we aim to estimate \mathfrak{B}_7 and \mathfrak{B}_8 . We only need to consider \mathfrak{B}_7 , as \mathfrak{B}_8 can be estimated similarly. Due to the decompositions of \hat{q}_1 and \hat{q}_2 , we have

$$\mathfrak{B}_{7} = 4\varepsilon\gamma\delta\int_{I_{\varepsilon}}\kappa'(s)q_{\theta}q_{\kappa}s_{11}\mathrm{d}z + 4\varepsilon\gamma\int_{I_{\varepsilon}}\kappa'(s)q_{\theta}p_{1}s_{11}\mathrm{d}z + 4\varepsilon\int_{I_{\varepsilon}}\kappa'(s)p_{0}\hat{q}_{1}s_{11}\mathrm{d}z.$$

=: $\mathfrak{B}_{7}^{1} + \mathfrak{B}_{7}^{2} + \mathfrak{B}_{7}^{3}.$

By (6.14), (3.6), and (3.26), we infer that for small ε

$$\begin{split} \mathfrak{B}_{7}^{1} &= 4\varepsilon\gamma\delta\int_{I_{\varepsilon}}\kappa'(s)(q_{\theta}-\alpha s')q_{\kappa}s_{11}\mathrm{d}z + 4\varepsilon\alpha\gamma\delta\int_{I_{\varepsilon}}\kappa'(s)s'(q_{\kappa}-\beta s)s_{11}\mathrm{d}z \\ &+ 4\varepsilon\alpha\beta\gamma\delta\int_{I_{\varepsilon}}\kappa'(s)s'ss_{11}\mathrm{d}z \\ &= 4\varepsilon\gamma\delta\int_{I_{\varepsilon}}\kappa'(s)(q_{\theta}-\alpha s')q_{\kappa}s_{11}\mathrm{d}z + 4\varepsilon\alpha\gamma\delta\int_{I_{\varepsilon}}\kappa'(s)s'(q_{\kappa}-\beta s)s_{11}\mathrm{d}z \\ &= O(\varepsilon^{\frac{3}{4}})\gamma\delta||q_{\theta}-\alpha s'||^{\frac{1}{2}}||q_{\kappa}||_{\omega} + O(\varepsilon)\alpha\gamma\delta||q_{\kappa}-\beta s||_{\omega} \\ &= O(e^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}})\gamma\delta \\ &\geq -Ce^{-\frac{C}{\varepsilon}}\int_{I_{\varepsilon}}\left(q_{0}^{2}+q_{1}^{2}\right)J\mathrm{d}z. \end{split}$$

From Young's inequality and Hölder's inequality, we deduce that

$$\mathfrak{B}_{7}^{2} \geq -C\epsilon\gamma \left(\int_{I_{\epsilon}} |q_{\theta}| \mathrm{d}z\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \|p_{1}\|_{\omega} \geq -C\epsilon^{2}\gamma^{2} - \frac{1}{4}\lambda_{\kappa,2} \|p_{1}\|_{\omega}^{2},$$

$$\mathfrak{B}_{7}^{3} = 4\epsilon \int_{I_{\epsilon}} \kappa'(s)p_{0}\hat{q}_{1}s_{11}\mathrm{d}z \geq -\frac{1}{32}\lambda_{\theta,2} \|p_{0}\|^{2} - C\epsilon^{2} \int_{I_{\epsilon}} q_{1}^{2}J\mathrm{d}z$$

Therefore, it holds

$$\mathfrak{B}_{7} \geq -C\varepsilon^{2} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(q_{0}^{2} + q_{1}^{2}\right) J \mathrm{d}z - \frac{1}{32}\lambda_{\theta,2} \|p_{0}\|^{2} - \frac{1}{4}\lambda_{\kappa,2} \|p_{1}\|_{\omega}^{2}.$$
(4.51)

🙆 Springer

Similarly, we have

$$\mathfrak{B}_{8} \geq -C\varepsilon^{2} \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(q_{0}^{2} + q_{2}^{2}\right) J \mathrm{d}z - \frac{1}{32}\lambda_{\theta,2} \|p_{0}\|^{2} - \frac{1}{4}\lambda_{\kappa,2} \|p_{2}\|_{\omega}^{2}.$$
(4.52)

Thanks to (4.48)–(4.52), we conclude that for small ε and $t \in [0, T]$

$$\mathfrak{B}_1 + \mathfrak{B}_2 + \dots + \mathfrak{B}_8 \ge -C\varepsilon^2 \int_{\Gamma_t^k} \mathrm{d}\sigma \int_{I_\varepsilon} \left(q_0^2 + q_1^2 + q_2^2\right) J \mathrm{d}z.$$
(4.53)

4.5 Proof of Theorem 1.2

By (4.45) and (4.53), there holds

$$\mathfrak{M}_G + \mathfrak{M}_M + \mathfrak{M}_B \ge -C \int_{\Gamma_t^k} d\sigma \int_{I_{\varepsilon}} \left(q_0^2 + q_1^2 + q_2^2 \right) J dz.$$
(4.54)

According to (4.5), (4.19), and (4.54), we have

$$\begin{split} \int_{\Omega} \Big(|\nabla \mathbf{Q}|^2 + \epsilon^{-2} (\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}_A^{\epsilon}} \mathbf{Q} : \mathbf{Q}) \Big) \mathrm{d}x &\geq \epsilon \Big(\mathfrak{M}_G + \mathfrak{M}_M + \mathfrak{M}_B \Big) - C \int_{\Omega} |\mathbf{Q}|^2 \mathrm{d}x. \\ &\geq -C \int_{\Gamma_I^k(1)} |\mathbf{Q}|^2 \mathrm{d}x - C \int_{\Omega} |\mathbf{Q}|^2 \mathrm{d}x \\ &\geq -C \int_{\Omega} |\mathbf{Q}|^2 \mathrm{d}x, \end{split}$$

where *C* is independent of small ε and $t \in [0, T]$.

Thus, the proof of Theorem 1.2 is completed.

5 Uniform Estimates for the Remainder Equation

This section is devoted to the proof of Theorem 1.3 and Corollary 1.4.

Proof of Theorem 1.3 We consider the error $\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon} \triangleq \frac{\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon} - \mathbf{Q}_{A}^{\varepsilon}}{\varepsilon^{m}}$ with *m* determined later. We introduce the energy $\mathcal{E}(t) = \mathcal{E}_{0}(t) + \mathcal{E}_{1}(t) + \mathcal{E}_{2}(t)$ with

$$\mathcal{E}_0(t) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\Omega} |\mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon}|^2(x, t) \mathrm{d}x, \quad \mathcal{E}_1(t) = \frac{\epsilon^6}{2} \int_{\Omega} |\nabla \mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon}|^2(x, t) \mathrm{d}x, \quad \mathcal{E}_2(t) = \frac{\epsilon^{12}}{2} \int_{\Omega} |\Delta \mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon}|^2(x, t) \mathrm{d}x.$$

Thanks to the Sobolev embedding, we have

$$\varepsilon^{3} \left\| \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}(\cdot, t) \right\|_{L^{4}(\Omega)} \le C \varepsilon^{3} \left\| \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}(\cdot, t) \right\|_{H^{1}(\Omega)} \le C \left(\mathcal{E}_{0}(t) + \mathcal{E}_{1}(t) \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}, \tag{5.1}$$

$$\varepsilon^{6} \left\| \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}(\cdot, t) \right\|_{L^{\infty}(\Omega)} \le C \varepsilon^{6} \left\| \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}(\cdot, t) \right\|_{H^{2}(\Omega)} \le C \left(\mathcal{E}_{0}(t) + \mathcal{E}_{2}(t) \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}, \tag{5.2}$$

$$\varepsilon^{6} \|\nabla \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\epsilon}(\cdot, t)\|_{L^{4}(\Omega)} \leq C\varepsilon^{6} \|\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\epsilon}(\cdot, t)\|_{H^{2}(\Omega)} \leq C \left(\mathcal{E}_{0}(t) + \mathcal{E}_{2}(t)\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$
 (5.3)

From (1.1) and (1.9), we find that

$$\partial_t \mathbf{Q}_R^{\varepsilon} = \Delta \mathbf{Q}_R^{\varepsilon} - \varepsilon^{-2} \mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}_A^{\varepsilon}} \mathbf{Q}_R^{\varepsilon} - \frac{1}{2} \varepsilon^{m-2} f_{\mathbf{Q}_A^{\varepsilon} + \frac{1}{3} \varepsilon^m \mathbf{Q}_R^{\varepsilon}}^{\prime\prime\prime} (\mathbf{Q}_R^{\varepsilon}, \mathbf{Q}_R^{\varepsilon}) - \varepsilon^{-m} \mathfrak{R}_k^{\varepsilon}.$$
(5.4)

Multiplying (5.4) by $\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\epsilon}$ and integrating it over Ω , we obtain

$$\frac{1}{2}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\int_{\Omega}|\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2}\mathrm{d}x+\int_{\Omega}\left(|\nabla\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2}+\varepsilon^{-2}\left(\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}_{A}^{\varepsilon}}\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}:\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}\right)\right)\mathrm{d}x$$
$$=-\frac{1}{2}\varepsilon^{m-2}\int_{\Omega}(f_{\mathbf{Q}_{A}^{\varepsilon}}^{\prime\prime}+\frac{1}{3}\varepsilon^{m}\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}(\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon},\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}):\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon})\mathrm{d}x-\varepsilon^{-m}\int_{\Omega}(\mathfrak{R}_{k}^{\varepsilon}:\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon})\mathrm{d}x.$$
(5.5)

Applying the spectral condition in Theorem 1.2 and (5.2) to (5.5), we deduce that

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\mathcal{E}_0(t) \le C\varepsilon^{k-m-1}\mathcal{E}_0^{\frac{1}{2}}(t) + C\mathcal{E}_0(t) + C\varepsilon^{m-8}\mathcal{E}_0(t)\big(\mathcal{E}_0(t) + \mathcal{E}_2(t)\big)^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$
(5.6)

Noting that, for $i \in \{1, 2, 3\}$:

$$\partial_{t}\partial_{i}\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\epsilon} = \Delta\partial_{i}\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\epsilon} - \epsilon^{-2}\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}_{A}^{\epsilon}}\partial_{i}\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\epsilon} - \epsilon^{-2}f_{\mathbf{Q}_{A}^{\epsilon}}^{\prime\prime}(\partial_{i}\mathbf{Q}_{A}^{\epsilon}, \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\epsilon}) - \epsilon^{m-2}f_{\mathbf{Q}_{A}^{\epsilon}+\frac{1}{3}}^{\prime\prime}\epsilon^{m}\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\epsilon}}(\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\epsilon}, \partial_{i}\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\epsilon}) - \epsilon^{-m}\partial_{i}\Re_{k}^{\epsilon} - c\epsilon^{m-2}\left(2\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\epsilon}(\partial_{i}\mathbf{Q}_{A}^{\epsilon}+\frac{1}{3}\epsilon^{m}\partial_{i}\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\epsilon}):\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\epsilon} + (\partial_{i}\mathbf{Q}_{A}^{\epsilon}+\frac{1}{3}\epsilon^{m}\partial_{i}\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\epsilon})|\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\epsilon}|^{2}\right).$$

$$(5.7)$$

Then, we have

$$\begin{split} \frac{1}{2} \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \int_{\Omega} |\partial_i \mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon}|^2 \mathrm{d}x &= -\int_{\Omega} \left(|\nabla \partial_i \mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon}|^2 + \varepsilon^{-2} \Big(\mathcal{H}_{\mathbf{Q}_A^{\epsilon}} \partial_i \mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon} : \partial_i \mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon} \Big) \Big) \mathrm{d}x \\ &- \varepsilon^{-2} \int_{\Omega} \Big(f_{\mathbf{Q}_A^{\epsilon}}^{\prime\prime} (\partial_i \mathbf{Q}_A^{\epsilon}, \mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon}) : \partial_i \mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon} \Big) \mathrm{d}x \\ &- \varepsilon^{m-2} \int_{\Omega} \left(f_{\mathbf{Q}_A^{\epsilon}}^{\prime\prime\prime} + \frac{\varepsilon^m}{3} \mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon} (\mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon}, \partial_i \mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon}) : \partial_i \mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon} \Big) \mathrm{d}x \\ &- c \varepsilon^{m-2} \int_{\Omega} \left(2 \big(\mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon} : \partial_i \mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon} \big) \big(\mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon} : \partial_i \mathbf{Q}_A^{\epsilon} \big) + \frac{2\varepsilon^m}{3} (\partial_i \mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon} : \mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon})^2 \Big) \mathrm{d}x \\ &- c \varepsilon^{m-2} \int_{\Omega} \left((\partial_i \mathbf{Q}_A^{\epsilon} : \partial_i \mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon}) |\mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon}|^2 + \frac{\varepsilon^m}{3} |\partial_i \mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon}|^2 |\mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon}|^2 \Big) \mathrm{d}x \\ &- \varepsilon^{-m} \int_{\Omega} \left(\partial_i \mathfrak{R}_R^{\epsilon} : \partial_i \mathbf{Q}_R^{\epsilon} \big) \mathrm{d}x. \end{split}$$

Using the spectral condition in Theorem 1.2 again, and noting that $\partial_i \mathbf{Q}_A^{\epsilon} \sim \frac{1}{\epsilon}$ and $\partial_i \mathbf{\mathcal{R}}_k^{\epsilon} \sim \epsilon^{k-2}$, we can deduce that

$$\frac{\varepsilon^{6}}{2} \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \int_{\Omega} |\nabla \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2} \mathrm{d}x \leq C\varepsilon^{6} \int_{\Omega} |\nabla \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2} \mathrm{d}x + \varepsilon^{k-m+4} \left(\int_{\Omega} |\nabla \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2} \mathrm{d}x \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} + C\varepsilon^{3} \int_{\Omega} |\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}| \cdot |\nabla \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}| \mathrm{d}x + C\varepsilon^{m+4} \int_{\Omega} |\nabla \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2} |\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}| \mathrm{d}x + C\varepsilon^{m+3} \int_{\Omega} |\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2} |\nabla \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}| \mathrm{d}x + C\varepsilon^{2m+4} \int_{\Omega} |\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2} |\nabla \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2} \mathrm{d}x.$$

$$(5.8)$$

Based on (5.8), (5.1), and (5.2), we arrive at

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\mathcal{E}_{1}(t) &\leq C\epsilon^{k-m+1}\mathcal{E}_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}}(t) + C\mathcal{E}_{1}(t) + C\mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}(t)\mathcal{E}_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}}(t) + C\epsilon^{m-6}\mathcal{E}_{1}(t)\big(\mathcal{E}_{0}(t) + \mathcal{E}_{1}(t)\big)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &+ C\epsilon^{m-8}\mathcal{E}_{1}(t)\big(\mathcal{E}_{0}(t) + \mathcal{E}_{2}(t)\big)^{\frac{1}{2}} + C\epsilon^{2m-14}\big(\mathcal{E}_{0}(t) + \mathcal{E}_{1}(t)\big)\big(\mathcal{E}_{0}(t) + \mathcal{E}_{2}(t)\big). \end{aligned}$$
(5.9)

Similarly, we obtain

$$\begin{split} &\frac{\varepsilon^{12}}{2} \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \int_{\Omega} |\Delta \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2} \mathrm{d}x \\ &\leq C\varepsilon^{12} \int_{\Omega} |\Delta \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2} \mathrm{d}x + \varepsilon^{k-m+9} \bigg(\int_{\Omega} |\Delta \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2} \mathrm{d}x \bigg)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &+ C\varepsilon^{8} \int_{\Omega} |\Delta \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}| \cdot |\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}| \mathrm{d}x + C\varepsilon^{9} \int_{\Omega} |\nabla \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}| \cdot |\Delta \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}| \mathrm{d}x \\ &+ C\varepsilon^{m+10} \int_{\Omega} |\Delta \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2} |\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}| \mathrm{d}x + C\varepsilon^{m+9} \int_{\Omega} |\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}| \cdot |\nabla \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}| \cdot |\Delta \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}| \mathrm{d}x \\ &+ C\varepsilon^{m+8} \int_{\Omega} |\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2} |\Delta \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}| \mathrm{d}x + C\varepsilon^{m+10} \int_{\Omega} |\nabla \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2} |\Delta \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}| \mathrm{d}x \\ &+ C\varepsilon^{2m+10} \int_{\Omega} |\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2} |\Delta \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2} \mathrm{d}x + C\varepsilon^{2m+10} \int_{\Omega} |\nabla \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}|^{2} |\Delta \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}| \cdot |\mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon}| \mathrm{d}x. \end{split}$$

In addition, from (5.10) and (5.1)–(5.3), we infer that

$$\begin{split} \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\mathcal{E}_{2}(t) &\leq C\varepsilon^{k-m+9}\mathcal{E}_{2}^{\frac{1}{2}}(t) + C\mathcal{E}_{2}(t) + C\varepsilon^{2}\mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}(t)\mathcal{E}_{2}^{\frac{1}{2}}(t) + C\mathcal{E}_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}}(t)\mathcal{E}_{2}^{\frac{1}{2}}(t) \\ &+ C\varepsilon^{m-4}\mathcal{E}_{2}^{\frac{1}{2}}(t)\big(\mathcal{E}_{0}(t) + \mathcal{E}_{1}(t)\big) + C\varepsilon^{m-6}\mathcal{E}_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}}(t)\mathcal{E}_{2}^{\frac{1}{2}}(t)\big(\mathcal{E}_{0}(t) + \mathcal{E}_{2}(t)\big)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &+ C\varepsilon^{m-8}\mathcal{E}_{2}(t)\big(\mathcal{E}_{0}(t) + \mathcal{E}_{2}(t)\big)^{\frac{1}{2}} + C\varepsilon^{m-8}\mathcal{E}_{2}^{\frac{1}{2}}(t)\big(\mathcal{E}_{0}(t) + \mathcal{E}_{2}(t)\big) \\ &+ C\varepsilon^{2m-14}\big(\mathcal{E}_{0}(t) + \mathcal{E}_{2}(t)\big)\mathcal{E}_{2}(t) + C\varepsilon^{2m-14}\big(\mathcal{E}_{0}(t) + \mathcal{E}_{2}(t)\big)^{\frac{3}{2}}\mathcal{E}_{2}^{\frac{1}{2}}(t). \end{split}$$

$$(5.11)$$

Combining (5.6), (5.9), and (5.11), we get

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\mathcal{E}(t) \leq C\left(\varepsilon^{k-m-1} + \varepsilon^{k-m+1} + \varepsilon^{k-m+9}\right)\mathcal{E}^{\frac{1}{2}}(t) + C\mathcal{E}(t) + C\left(\varepsilon^{m-8} + \varepsilon^{m-6} + \varepsilon^{m-4}\right)\mathcal{E}^{\frac{3}{2}}(t) + C\varepsilon^{2m-14}\mathcal{E}^{2}(t).$$
(5.12)

Taking m = 9 and k = 10 in (5.12), we then have

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\mathcal{E}(t) \le C_1 + C_1\mathcal{E}(t) + C_1\varepsilon\mathcal{E}^{\frac{3}{2}}(t) + C_1\varepsilon^4\mathcal{E}^2(t).$$
(5.13)

Noting that from (1.11), we derive that $\mathcal{E}(0) \leq C_2$ for some $C_2 > 0$. Define

$$T_1 = \left\{ t \in [0, T] : \mathcal{E}(t) \le 2 \left(C_2 e^{3C_1 T} + \frac{1}{3} (e^{3C_1 T} - 1) \right) \right\}.$$

By (5.13), there exists $\varepsilon_0 > 0$ dependent of C_1, C_2 , and T, such that for $\varepsilon < \varepsilon_0$:

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\mathcal{E}(t) \le C_1 + 3C_1\mathcal{E}(t),$$

which implies that

$$\mathcal{E}(t) \le C_2 e^{3C_1 T} + \frac{1}{3} (e^{3C_1 T} - 1).$$

Thus, $T_1 = T$ from a continuous argument. Noting that $\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon} - \mathbf{Q}_A^{\varepsilon} = \varepsilon^m \mathbf{Q}_R^{\varepsilon}$, we can end the proof of Theorem 1.3.

Remark 5.1 Such a qualitative conclusion immediately tells us that making higher order expansion is very necessary. From the procedure of the proof, the higher order expansion will remedy the order of decay with respect to ε for the term $\int_{\Omega} (\mathbf{Q}_B^{\varepsilon} : \mathbf{Q}_R^{\varepsilon}) dx$.

Finally, let us prove Corollary 1.4.

Proof of Corollary 1.4 From (2.6), we deduce that

$$\mathbf{Q}^{\varepsilon} - \mathbf{Q}^{(0)} = \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon} + \mathbf{Q}_{A}^{\varepsilon} - \mathbf{Q}^{(0)} = \mathbf{Q}_{R}^{\varepsilon} + O(\varepsilon)$$

and

$$s(z) - s\left(\frac{\varphi}{\varepsilon} + \varphi^{(1)}\right) = s\left(\frac{\varphi}{\varepsilon} + \varphi^{(1)} + \varepsilon\varphi^{(1)} + \dots + \varepsilon^{k-1}\varphi^{(k)}\right) - s\left(\frac{\varphi}{\varepsilon} + \varphi^{(1)}\right) = O(\varepsilon),$$

which conclude the proof.

Acknowledgements M. Fei is partly supported by NSF of China under Grant 11301005 and AHNSF grant 1608085MA13. W. Wang is partly supported by NSF of China under Grant 11501502 and "the Fundamental Research Funds for the Central Universities" No. 2016QNA3004. P. Zhang is partially supported by NSF of China under Grant 11421101 and 11421110001. Z. Zhang is partially supported by NSF of China under Grant 11425103.

Appendix 1

The Leading Order Profile of Q Near the Transition Layer

The following equation describes the profile of the leading order of \mathbf{Q} near the transition layer [see (2.44)]:

$$\partial_{zz} \mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)} = f\left(\mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)}\right), \qquad \mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)}(-\infty) = 0, \quad \mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)}(+\infty) = s_+\left(\mathbf{nn} - \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{I}\right).$$

It has a uniaxial solution $\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)}(z) = s(z)(\mathbf{nn} - \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{I})$, with s(z) given by the following:

$$\begin{cases} -s'' + f(s) = -s'' + as - \frac{b}{3}s^2 + \frac{2}{3}cs^3 = 0, \\ s(-\infty) = 0, \ s(+\infty) = s_+. \end{cases}$$
(6.1)

This equation has an explicit solution

$$s(z) = \frac{s_+}{2} \left(1 + \tanh\left(\frac{\sqrt{a}}{2}z\right) \right). \tag{6.2}$$

Obviously, $s' = \sqrt{\frac{c}{3}}s(s_+ - s)$ and

$$s(-|z|), s_+ - s(|z|), \partial_z^k s(\pm |z|) = O\left(e^{-\sqrt{a}|z|}\right) \text{ for } |z| \to \infty, k \ge 1.$$

Remark 6.1 Here, $\tanh x = \frac{e^x - e^{-x}}{e^x + e^{-x}}$ satisfies $\tanh^{\prime\prime} x = 2 \tanh x (\tanh x - 1) (\tanh x + 1)$,

$$\lim_{x \to -\infty} \tanh x = -1 \text{ and } \lim_{x \to +\infty} \tanh x = 1. \text{ More generally, the function}$$
$$u(z) = \frac{\beta - \alpha}{2} \left(\frac{\beta + \alpha}{\beta - \alpha} + \tanh(|\beta - \alpha| \sqrt{\frac{\gamma}{8}}(z - z_0)) \right) \text{satisfies } u'' = \gamma(u - \frac{\beta + \alpha}{2})(u - \alpha)(u - \beta),$$
$$\lim_{z \to -\infty} u(z) = \alpha, u(z_0) = \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \text{ and } \lim_{z \to +\infty} u(z) = \beta, \ \alpha, \beta, z_0 \in \mathbb{R}, \gamma \in \mathbb{R}^+.$$

Existence of ζ

Lemma 6.2 There exists a smooth function ζ satisfying (2.38)–(2.39).

Proof First of all, we have $s(-z) + s(z) = s_+$. Let $\chi(x)$ be a smooth non-decreasing function with $\chi(x) = 0$ for $x \le s_+/5$ and $\chi(x) = 1$ for $s \ge 4s_+/5$. In addition, we assume that $\chi(x) + \chi(s_+ - x) = 1$ for $x \in \mathbb{R}$. Define $\zeta(z) = \chi(s(z))$, and then, $\zeta(-z) + \zeta(z) = \chi(s(-z)) + \chi(s(z)) = \chi(s_+ - s(z)) + \chi(s(z)) = 1$, which implies that ζ'' is odd. As s' is even, we know that

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta'' s' \mathrm{d}z = 0.$$

On the other hand, we have

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s dz = s_{+} - \int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta s' dz = s_{+} - \int_{0}^{s_{+}} \chi(s) ds = \frac{s_{+}}{2},$$

and

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s' dz = -\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta s'' dz = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta s'' dz$$
$$= 2\sqrt{\frac{c}{3}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta \left(s - \frac{s_+}{2}\right) s' dz = 2\sqrt{\frac{c}{3}} \int_0^{s_+} \chi(s) \left(s - \frac{s_+}{2}\right) ds,$$

and

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} (s')^2 dz = \sqrt{\frac{c}{3}} \int_0^{s_+} s(s_+ - s) ds = \frac{1}{6} \sqrt{\frac{c}{3}} (s_+)^3;$$

then, (2.39) implies that

$$2\int_{\mathbb{R}} (s')^2 dz \int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s dz - (s_+)^2 \int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s' dz = 2\sqrt{\frac{c}{3}} (s_+)^2 \left(\frac{(s_+)^2}{12} - \int_0^{s_+} \chi(s) \left(s - \frac{s_+}{2}\right) ds\right).$$

Let

$$\bar{\chi}_1(x) = \mathbf{1}_{\{x \ge s_+/2\}}, \quad \bar{\chi}_2(x) = \mathbf{1}_{\{x \ge 4s_+/5\}} + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{1}_{\{s_+/5 \le x \le 4s_+/5\}}.$$

Then, we have

$$\int_{0}^{s_{+}} \bar{\chi}_{1}(s) \left(s - \frac{s_{+}}{2}\right) ds = \frac{s(s - s_{+})}{2} \Big|_{s_{+}/2}^{s_{+}} = \frac{s_{+}^{2}}{8} > \frac{s_{+}^{2}}{12},$$
$$\int_{0}^{s_{+}} \bar{\chi}_{2}(s) \left(s - \frac{s_{+}}{2}\right) ds = \frac{s(s - s_{+})}{2} \Big|_{4s_{+}/5}^{s_{+}} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{s(s - s_{+})}{2} \Big|_{s_{+}/5}^{4s_{+}/5} = \frac{2s_{+}^{2}}{25} < \frac{s_{+}^{2}}{12}.$$

Thus, there exist smooth non-decreasing functions $\chi_1(x)$, $\chi_2(x)$ close to $\bar{\chi}_1(x)$, $\bar{\chi}_2(x)$, such that

$$\chi_i(\{x \le s_+/5\}) = 0, \quad \chi_i(\{x \ge 4s_+/5\}) = 1, \quad \text{for } i = 1, 2;$$
$$\int_0^{s_+} \chi_1(s) \left(s - \frac{s_+}{2}\right) ds > \frac{s_+^2}{12}, \quad \int_0^{s_+} \chi_2(s) \left(s - \frac{s_+}{2}\right) ds < \frac{s_+^2}{12}.$$

Therefore, we can choose $\chi(x) = a_1\chi_1(x) + (1 - a_1)\chi_2(x)$ as a linear combination of $\chi_1(x)$ and $\chi_2(x)$, such that

$$\chi(\{x \le s_+/5\}) = 0, \quad \chi(\{x \ge 4s_+/5\}) = 1, \quad \int_0^{s_+} \chi(s) \left(s - \frac{s_+}{2}\right) ds = \frac{s_+^2}{12}.$$

Then, (2.38)–(2.39) are satisfied for $\zeta(z) = \chi(s(z))$.

Differential Operators in the Transition Layer

Let $X(\hat{x}_1, \hat{x}_2) \in \Gamma$ be the parameterization of Γ , and $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{n}(\hat{x}_1, \hat{x}_2) = (\mathbf{n}_1, \mathbf{n}_2, \mathbf{n}_3)$ be the unit normal vector to Γ . Two tangent vectors to Γ are $\mathbf{t}_i = \frac{\partial X}{\partial \hat{x}_i} = (\mathbf{t}_{i1}, \mathbf{t}_{i2}, \mathbf{t}_{i3}), i = 1, 2$.

Set $\hat{x} = (\hat{x}_1, \hat{x}_2)$ and $\hat{y} = \varphi \in (-2\delta, 2\delta)$. Then, for any $x \in \Gamma(2\delta)$:

$$x = x(\hat{x}, \hat{y}) = X(\hat{x}_1, \hat{x}_2) + \hat{y}\mathbf{n}.$$
(6.3)

Let h(0) and b denote the first fundamental form and the second fundamental form on Γ . Then, for $i, j \in \{1, 2\}$:

$$h_{ij}(0)(\hat{x}) = \left(\frac{\partial X}{\partial \hat{x}_i} \cdot \frac{\partial X}{\partial \hat{x}_j}\right)(\hat{x}),\tag{6.4}$$

$$b_{ij}(\hat{x}) = \left(\frac{\partial \mathbf{n}}{\partial \hat{x}_i} \cdot \frac{\partial X}{\partial \hat{x}_j}\right)(\hat{x}) = \left(\frac{\partial X}{\partial \hat{x}_i} \cdot \frac{\partial \mathbf{n}}{\partial \hat{x}_j}\right)(\hat{x}) = b_{ji}(\hat{x}).$$
(6.5)

Moreover, h(0) is a positive definite matrix.

Define the matrix $w(\hat{x}, \hat{y}) = I + \hat{y}bh^{-1}(0)$, here *I* is the unit matrix. Direct computations lead to $\det w = 1 + \operatorname{tr}(bh^{-1}(0))\hat{y} + \det(bh^{-1}(0))\hat{y}^2$, and hence, $0 < C_1 \leq \det w \leq C_2$. Moreover, $G(\hat{x}, \hat{y}) := \det h(0)(\det w)^2$ and $\gamma(\hat{x}, \hat{y}) := \frac{1}{\det w} \frac{\partial \det w}{\partial \hat{y}} = \partial_{\hat{y}}(\ln \det w)$. Then, for the function $f : \Gamma(2\delta) \to \mathbf{R}$, we have

$$\nabla f = \frac{\partial f}{\partial \hat{y}} \mathbf{n} + \sum_{i,j=1}^{2} (wh(0))^{ij} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \hat{x}_{i}} \mathbf{t}_{j},$$
(6.6)

$$\begin{split} \Delta f &= \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial \hat{y}^2} + \gamma(\hat{x}, \hat{y}) \frac{\partial f}{\partial \hat{y}} + \sum_{i,j=1}^2 \frac{1}{\sqrt{G}} \frac{\partial}{\partial \hat{x}_i} \left(\sqrt{G} (w^2 h(0))^{ij} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \hat{x}_j} \right) \\ &= \nabla (\nabla f \cdot \nabla \varphi) \cdot \nabla \varphi + \gamma(\hat{x}, \hat{y}) \nabla f \cdot \nabla \varphi + \sum_{i,j=1}^2 \frac{1}{\sqrt{G}} \frac{\partial}{\partial \hat{x}_i} \left(\sqrt{G} (w^2 h(0))^{ij} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \hat{x}_j} \right) \\ &=: \nabla (\nabla f \cdot \nabla \varphi) \cdot \nabla \varphi + \gamma(\hat{x}, \hat{y}) \nabla f \cdot \nabla \varphi + \Delta_{\sigma} f, \end{split}$$
(6.7)

and here, $(wh(0))^{ij}$ and $(w^2h(0))^{ij}$ are the entries of the matrix $(wh(0))^{-1}$ and $(w^2h(0))^{-1}$.

Proofs of Lemmas 2.6–2.8

Proof of Lemma 2.6 By the method of variation of constants, we can solve (2.59) with $s_0(0, x, t) = 1$ explicitly as in (2.67). First, we check (2.65) in the case of j = 0, 1, 2 and l = m = 0, and other cases can be obtained by the induction argument. Fixing $z_0 \gg 1$, we have for $z > z_0$

$$\begin{aligned} \left| s_0(z,x,t) - \frac{f_0^+(x,t)}{a} \right| &= \left| \frac{s'(z)}{s'(0)} + s'(z) \int_0^{z_0} (s'(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{\zeta}^{+\infty} f_0(\tau,x,t) s'(\tau) d\tau d\zeta \\ &+ s'(z) \int_{z_0}^{z} (s'(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{\zeta}^{+\infty} \left(f_0(\tau,x,t) - f_0^+(x,t) \right) s'(\tau) d\tau d\zeta \\ &+ f_0^+(x,t) s'(z) \int_{z_0}^{z} (s'(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{\zeta}^{+\infty} s'(\tau) d\tau d\zeta - \frac{f_0^+(x,t)}{a} \right| \\ &\leq C s'(z) + C s'(z) \int_{z_0}^{z} (s'(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{\zeta}^{+\infty} \tau^k \left(s_+ - s(\tau) \right) s'(\tau) d\tau d\zeta \\ &+ \left| f_0^+(x,t) \right| \cdot \left| s'(z) \int_{z_0}^{z} \frac{s_+ - s(\zeta)}{(s'(\zeta))^2} d\zeta - \frac{1}{a} \right|. \end{aligned}$$

Since $s' = \sqrt{\frac{c}{3}}s(s_+ - s)$ and $s'' = s(a - \frac{b}{3}s + \frac{2c}{3}s^2) = \frac{2c}{3}s(s - \frac{s_+}{2})(s - s_+)$, we can get

$$\lim_{\varsigma \to +\infty} \frac{(s'(\varsigma))^{-2} \int_{\varsigma}^{+\infty} \tau^{k} (s_{+} - s(\tau)) s'(\tau) d\tau}{\varsigma^{k}}$$

=
$$\lim_{\varsigma \to +\infty} \frac{\int_{\varsigma}^{+\infty} \tau^{k} (s_{+} - s(\tau)) s'(\tau) d\tau}{(s'(\varsigma))^{2} \varsigma^{k}} = -\lim_{\varsigma \to +\infty} \frac{1}{\frac{ks'}{(s_{+} - s)\varsigma} + 2\frac{s''}{s_{+} - s}} = \frac{1}{2a},$$
 (6.8)

Deringer

and

$$\left|s'(z)\int_{z_0}^z \frac{s_+ - s(\zeta)}{(s'(\zeta))^2} \mathrm{d}\zeta - \frac{1}{a}\right| \le Cs'(z).$$

Therefore, for $z \gg 1$

$$s_0(z, x, t) - \frac{f_0^+(x, t)}{a} \bigg| \le C |z|^{k+1} s'(z) \le C |z|^{k+1} \big(s_+ - s(z) \big).$$

Noting that

$$\begin{split} |\hat{s_0}'(z,x,t)| &= \left| s''(z) \int_0^z (s'(\varsigma))^{-2} \int_{\varsigma}^{+\infty} \left(f_0(\tau,x,t) - f_0^+(x,t) \right) s'(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau \mathrm{d}\varsigma \\ &+ (s'(z))^{-1} \int_{z}^{+\infty} \left(f_0(\tau,x,t) - f_0^+(x,t) \right) s'(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau \\ &- 2\sqrt{\frac{c}{3}} f_0^+(x,t) \left(s - \frac{s_+}{2} \right) s'(z) \int_{z_0}^z \frac{s_+ - s(\varsigma)}{(s'(\varsigma))^2} \mathrm{d}\varsigma \\ &+ f_0^+(x,t) \frac{s_+ - s}{s'} \right|. \end{split}$$

From (6.8), one has

$$\begin{aligned} \left| s''(z) \int_0^z (s'(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{\zeta}^{+\infty} \left(f_0(\tau, x, t) - f_0^+(x, t) \right) s'(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau \mathrm{d}\zeta \\ &\leq C |z|^{k+1} s''(z) \leq C |z|^{k+1} \left(s_+ - s(z) \right), \quad \text{for } z \gg 1. \end{aligned}$$

In addition, we have

$$\lim_{z \to +\infty} \frac{(s'(z))^{-1} \int_{z}^{+\infty} \tau^{k} (s_{+} - s(\tau)) s'(\tau) d\tau}{z^{k+1} (s_{+} - s(z))}$$
$$= \lim_{z \to +\infty} \frac{\int_{z}^{+\infty} \tau^{k} (s_{+} - s(\tau)) s'(\tau) d\tau}{z^{k+1} (s_{+} - s(z)) s'(z)}$$
$$= -\lim_{z \to +\infty} \frac{1}{\frac{zs''}{s'} - \frac{zs'}{s_{+} - s} + k + 1} = 0,$$

then there holds

$$\left| (s'(z))^{-1} \int_{-\infty}^{z} \tau^{k} s(\tau) s'(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau \right| \le C |z|^{k+1} (s_{+} - s(z)), \quad \text{for } z \gg 1.$$

Moreover, one has

$$\left| f_0^+(x,t) \frac{s_+ - s}{s'} - 2\sqrt{\frac{c}{3}} f_0^+(x,t) \left(s - \frac{s_+}{2} \right) s'(z) \int_{z_0}^z \frac{s_+ - s(\varsigma)}{(s'(\varsigma))^2} \mathrm{d}\varsigma \right| \le C |z| \left(s_+ - s(z) \right), \quad \text{for } z \gg 1.$$

Consequently, one has

$$|s'_0(z, x, t)| \le C|z|^{k+1} (s_+ - s(z)), \text{ for } z \gg 1,$$

where the constant C is independent of z, x, t.

Furthermore, due to (2.59), we get

$$|s_0''(z,x,t)| \le C|z|^{k+1} (s_+ - s(z)), \text{ for } z \gg 1,$$

where the constant C is independent of z, x, t.

Second, we check (2.66) in the case of j = 0, 1, 2 and l = m = 0, and other cases can be obtained by the induction argument. Noting that for z < 0 and $|z| \gg 1$, one has

$$\begin{aligned} |s_0(z,x,t)| &= \left| \frac{s'(z)}{s'(0)} + s'(z) \int_0^z (s'(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{-\infty}^{\zeta} f_0(\tau,x,t) s'(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau \mathrm{d}\zeta \right| \\ &\leq \left| \frac{s'(z)}{s'(0)} \right| + \left| s'(z) \int_0^z (s'(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{-\infty}^{\zeta} \tau^k s(\tau) s'(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau \mathrm{d}\zeta \right|. \end{aligned}$$

Since $s' = \sqrt{\frac{c}{3}}s(s_{+} - s)$ and $s'' = s(a - \frac{b}{3}s + \frac{2c}{3}s^{2})$, we have

$$\lim_{\varsigma \to -\infty} \frac{(s'(\varsigma))^{-2} \int_{-\infty}^{\varsigma} s'(\tau) s(\tau) \tau^k \mathrm{d}\tau}{\varsigma^k} = \lim_{\varsigma \to -\infty} \frac{\int_{-\infty}^{\varsigma} s'(\tau) s(\tau) \tau^k \mathrm{d}\tau}{(s'(\varsigma))^2 \varsigma^k} = \lim_{\varsigma \to -\infty} \frac{1}{\frac{ks'}{s\varsigma} + 2\frac{s''}{s}} = \frac{1}{2a}.$$
(6.9)

Thus,

$$|s_0(z, x, t)| \le C|z|^{k+1} s'(z) \le C|z|^{k+1} s(z), \text{ for } z < 0 \text{ and } |z| \gg 1,$$

where the constant C is independent of z, x, and t.

Noting that, for z < 0 and $|z| \gg 1$:

$$\begin{split} |\hat{s_0}'(z,x,t)| &= \left| s''(z) \int_0^z (s'(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{\zeta}^{+\infty} f_0(\tau,x,t) s'(\tau) d\tau d\zeta + (s'(z))^{-1} \int_{z}^{+\infty} f_0(\tau,x,t) s'(\tau) d\tau d\tau \right| \\ &= \left| s''(z) \int_0^z (s'(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{\zeta}^{+\infty} f_0(\tau,x,t) s'(\tau) d\tau d\zeta - (s'(z))^{-1} \int_{-\infty}^z f_0(\tau,x,t) s'(\tau) d\tau d\tau \right| \\ &\leq \left| s''(z) \int_0^z (s'(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{\zeta}^{+\infty} f_0(\tau,x,t) s'(\tau) d\tau d\zeta \right| + C \left| (s'(z))^{-1} \int_{-\infty}^z \tau^k s(\tau) s'(\tau) d\tau d\tau \right|. \end{split}$$

From (6.9), one has

$$\left| s''(z) \int_0^z (s'(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{\zeta}^{+\infty} f_0(\tau, x, t) s'(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau \mathrm{d}\zeta \right| \le C |z|^{k+1} s''(z) \le C |z|^{k+1} s(z), \quad \text{for } z \ll 1.$$

Moreover, we have

$$\lim_{z \to -\infty} \frac{(s'(z))^{-1} \int_{-\infty}^{z} \tau^k s(\tau) s'(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau}{z^{k+1} s(z)} = \lim_{z \to -\infty} \frac{\int_{-\infty}^{z} \tau^k s(\tau) s'(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau}{z^{k+1} s(z) s'(z)} = \lim_{z \to -\infty} \frac{1}{\frac{z s''}{s'} + \frac{z s'}{s} + k + 1} = 0,$$

and then, there holds

$$\left| (s'(z))^{-1} \int_{-\infty}^{z} \tau^{k} s(\tau) s'(\tau) d\tau \right| \le C |z|^{k+1} s(z), \quad \text{for } z < 0 \text{ and } |z| \gg 1.$$

Consequently, one has

$$|s'_0(z, x, t)| \le C|z|^{k+1}s(z)$$
, for $z < 0$ and $|z| \gg 1$,

where the constant C is independent of z, x, and t. Furthermore, due to (2.59), we get

$$|s_0''(z, x, t)| \le C|z|^{k+1}s(z)$$
, for $z < 0$ and $|z| \gg 1$,

where the constant C is independent of z, x, and t.

Furthermore, if v satisfies

$$-w'' + \left(a - \frac{2b}{3}s + 2cs^2\right)w = 0, \quad w(\pm\infty) = 0, \quad w(0) = 0,$$

and then, ws''' - s'w'' = 0. Thus, ws'' - s'w' = 0, and then, $(\frac{w}{s'})' = 0$, which implies w = 0. Therefore, we obtain the uniqueness of the solution.

Proof of Lemma 2.7 Let $s_1(z, x, t) = s(z)r_1(z, x, t)$. From (2.60), we need to focus on the following equation for $(x, t) \in \Gamma(\delta)$:

$$-r_1''(z)s(z) - 2r_1'(z)s'(z) = f_1(z, x, t).$$
(6.10)

We can easily verify that

$$r_{12}(z, x, t) = \frac{s_1^+(x, t)}{s_+} - \int_z^{+\infty} (s(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{\zeta}^{+\infty} f_1(\tau, x, t) s(\tau) d\tau d\zeta$$

satisfies (6.10), and then, s_1 defined in (2.73) satisfies (2.60). Provided that (2.68)–(2.70) hold, we next check the behaviors (2.71) and (2.72). By the induction argument, we only need to check them in the case of j = 0, 1, 2 and l = m = 0.

For $z \gg 1$, one has

$$\begin{aligned} \left| s(z) \int_{z}^{+\infty} (s(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{\zeta}^{+\infty} f_{1}(\tau, x, t) s(\tau) d\tau d\zeta \right| \\ &\leq C \left| s(z) \int_{z}^{+\infty} (s(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{\zeta}^{+\infty} \tau^{k} (s_{+} - s(\tau)) s(\tau) d\tau d\zeta \right| \\ &\leq C \int_{z}^{+\infty} \int_{\zeta}^{+\infty} \tau^{k} e^{-\sqrt{a\tau}} d\tau d\zeta \leq C z^{k} e^{-\sqrt{az}} \leq C |z|^{k+1} (s_{+} - s(z)), \end{aligned}$$

which implies that (2.71) holds in the case of j = 0 and l = m = 0. Similarly, we can deduce that (2.71) holds in the case of j = 1, 2 and l = m = 0.

For fixed $z_0 \ll 1$ and $z < z_0$, we arrive at

$$\begin{split} |\widehat{s_1}(z,x,t)| &\leq \left| -s(z) \int_{z_0}^{+\infty} (s(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{\zeta}^{+\infty} f_1(\tau,x,t) s(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau \mathrm{d}\zeta \right| \\ &+ \left| s(z) \int_{z}^{z_0} (s(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{-\infty}^{\zeta} f_1(\tau,x,t) s(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau \mathrm{d}\zeta \right| \\ &\leq C s(z) + C \left| s(z) \int_{z}^{z_0} (s(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{-\infty}^{\zeta} \tau^k s^2(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau \mathrm{d}\zeta \right|. \end{split}$$

Noting that

$$\lim_{\varsigma \to -\infty} \frac{(s(\varsigma))^{-2} \int_{-\infty}^{\varsigma} s^2(\tau) \tau^k \mathrm{d}\tau}{\varsigma^k} = \lim_{\varsigma \to -\infty} \frac{\int_{-\infty}^{\varsigma} s^2(\tau) \tau^k \mathrm{d}\tau}{(s(\varsigma))^2 \varsigma^k} = \lim_{\varsigma \to -\infty} \frac{1}{\frac{k}{\varsigma} + 2\frac{s'}{s}} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{a}}$$

Deringer

which implies that

$$\left| s(z) \int_{z}^{z_0} (s(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{-\infty}^{\zeta} \tau^k s^2(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau \mathrm{d}\zeta \right| \le C |z|^{k+1} s(z).$$

Therefore,

$$|s_1(z, x, t)| \le Cs(z) + C|z|^{k+1}s(z) \le C|z|^{k+1}s(z), \text{ for } z \ll 1,$$

where the constant *C* is independent of z, x, t.

Based on similar arguments, we easily obtain that, for $z \ll 1$:

$$\begin{aligned} |s_1'(z,x,t)| &= \left| \frac{s'(z)s_1^+(x,t)}{s_+} - s'(z) \int_z^{+\infty} (s(\zeta))^{-2} \int_{\zeta}^{+\infty} f_1(\tau,x,t) s(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau \mathrm{d}\zeta \right. \\ &- (s(z))^{-1} \int_{-\infty}^z f_1(\tau,x,t) s(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau \bigg| \\ &\leq C |z|^{k+1} s(z) + \left| (s(z))^{-1} \int_{-\infty}^z \tau^k s^2(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau \right|. \end{aligned}$$

In addition

$$\lim_{z \to -\infty} \frac{(s(z))^{-1} \int_{-\infty}^{z} s^{2}(\tau) \tau^{k} \mathrm{d}\tau}{z^{k+1} s(z)} = \lim_{z \to -\infty} \frac{\int_{-\infty}^{z} s^{2}(\tau) \tau^{k} \mathrm{d}\tau}{(s(z))^{2} z^{k+1}} = \lim_{z \to -\infty} \frac{1}{k+1+2\frac{zx'}{s}} = 0,$$

which implies that

$$\left| (s(z))^{-1} \int_{-\infty}^{z} \tau^{k} s^{2}(\tau) \mathrm{d}\tau \right| \leq C |z|^{k+1} s(z), \quad \text{for } z \ll 1$$

Then, we get

$$|s_1'(z, x, t)| \le C|z|^{k+1}s(z),$$

where the constant C is independent of z, x, and t.

Due to (2.60), we get

$$|s_1''(z, x, t)| \le C|z|^{k+1}s(z), \text{ for } z \ll 1,$$

where the constant *C* is independent of z, x, t.

Furthermore, if v satisfies

$$-w'' + \left(a - \frac{b}{3}s + \frac{2c}{3}s^2\right)w = 0, \quad w(\pm\infty) = 0,$$

then ws'' - sw'' = 0. Thus, ws' - sw' = 0, and then, $(\frac{w}{s})' = 0$, which implies w = 0. Therefore, we obtain the uniqueness of the solution.

Proof of Lemma 2.8 Since

$$a + \frac{2b}{3}s(z) + \frac{2c}{3}s^2(z) \to a, \ z \to -\infty, \ a + \frac{2b}{3}s(z) + \frac{2c}{3}s^2(z) \to bs_+, \ z \to +\infty,$$

there exist two linearly independent functions $\varpi_1(z)$ and $\varpi_2(z)$, which satisfy

$$-\varpi''(z) + \left(a + \frac{2b}{3}s(z) + \frac{2c}{3}s^2(z)\right)\varpi(z) = 0,$$
(6.11)

and as $z \to -\infty$

$$\boldsymbol{\varpi}_1(z) \sim e^{\sqrt{a}z}, \quad \boldsymbol{\varpi}_1'(z) \sim \sqrt{a}e^{\sqrt{a}z}, \quad \boldsymbol{\varpi}_2(z) \sim e^{-\sqrt{a}z}, \quad \boldsymbol{\varpi}_2'(z) \sim -\sqrt{a}e^{-\sqrt{a}z},$$
(6.12)

and as $z \to +\infty$

$$\varpi_1(z) \sim e^{\sqrt{bs_+}z}, \quad \varpi'_1(z) \sim \sqrt{bs_+}e^{\sqrt{bs_+}z}, \quad \varpi_2(z) \sim e^{-\sqrt{bs_+}z}, \quad \varpi'_2(z) \sim -\sqrt{bs_+}e^{-\sqrt{bs_+}z},$$
and here, $f \sim g$ means $\frac{f}{g} \to 1$.
$$(6.13)$$

Using the method of variation of constants, one has

$$s_2(z,x,t) = \frac{1}{\omega_0} \left(\varpi_2(z) \int_0^z \varpi_1(\tau) f_2(\tau,x,t) \mathrm{d}\tau - \varpi_1(z) \int_0^z \varpi_2(\tau) f_2(\tau,x,t) \mathrm{d}\tau \right);$$

here, $\omega_0 = \overline{\omega}_1 \overline{\omega}_2' - \overline{\omega}_2 \overline{\omega}_1'$. In addition, the solution is unique $a + \frac{2b}{3}s(z) + \frac{2c}{3}s^2(z) \ge a > 0$. According to the expression of $s_2(z, x, t)$, we find that by

$$|s_2(z, x, t)| \le C,$$

where the constant C is independent of z, x, t. Then, from the maximum principle and the induction argument, we can get (2.76) and

 \square

$$\left|\partial_z^j \partial_x^l \partial_t^m s_2(z, x, t)\right| = O(e^{-Cz}), \ j, l, m = 0, 1, \cdots, \quad \text{for } z \ll 1.$$

To verify (2.77), we rewrite (2.61) as

$$-s_2''(z,x,t) + \left(a - \frac{b}{3}s(z) + \frac{2c}{3}s^2(z)\right)s_2(z,x,t) = f_2(z,x,t) - bs(z)s_2(z,x,t).$$

Noting that

$$\left|\partial_z^j \partial_x^l \partial_t^m \left(f_2(z, x, t) - bs(z)s_2(z, x, t)\right)\right| \le C|z|^k s(z), \quad \text{for } z \ll 1 \text{ and some } k \in \mathbb{N},$$

and

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(f_2(z,x,t) - bs(z)s_2(z,x,t) \right) s(z) \mathrm{d}z = 0.$$

Using the same arguments in proving Lemma 2.7, we can get (2.77).

Cancellation Lemma

The following lemma is key to deal with the "bad terms" during the procedure of proving *the spectral condition*.

Lemma 6.3 (Cancellation)

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} \theta'(s) s_{10}(s')^2 dz = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \kappa'(s) s_{10} s^2 dz = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \kappa'(s) s' s s_{11} dz = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \kappa'(s) s' s s_{12} dz = 0.$$
(6.14)

Proof Due to (2.55), one has

$$-s_{10}^{\prime\prime\prime} + \theta^{\prime}(s)s^{\prime}s_{10} + \theta(s)s_{10}^{\prime} = (\Delta\varphi - \varphi_t)s^{\prime\prime} + g_{00}\varphi\zeta^{\prime\prime}.$$

Multiplying the above equation by s', integrating by parts and using (2.39), we get

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} \theta'(s) s_{10}(s')^2 \mathrm{d} z = g_{00} \varphi \int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta'' s' \mathrm{d} z = 0.$$

Notice that $\kappa(s) = \frac{f(s)}{s}$, and then, $\kappa'(s) = \frac{\theta(s)s - f(s)}{s^2}$ and $\kappa'(s)s^2 = \theta(s)s - f(s)$. Multiplying (2.55) by *s*, integrating by parts, and using (2.39) and (2.78), we get

$$\begin{split} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \kappa'(s) s_{10} s^2 \mathrm{d}z &= \frac{1}{2} \left(\Delta \varphi - \varphi_t \right) (s_+)^2 + g_{00} \varphi \int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s \mathrm{d}z \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left(\Delta \varphi - \varphi_t \right) (s_+)^2 - \left(\Delta \varphi - \varphi_t \right) \int_{\mathbb{R}} (s')^2 \mathrm{d}z \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s \mathrm{d}z}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s' \mathrm{d}z} \\ &= \left(\Delta \varphi - \varphi_t \right) \left(\frac{(s_+)^2}{2 \int_{\mathbb{R}} (s')^2 \mathrm{d}z} - \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s \mathrm{d}z}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s' \mathrm{d}z} \right) \int_{\mathbb{R}} (s')^2 \mathrm{d}z \\ &= 0. \end{split}$$

Due to (2.56), one has

$$-s_{11}^{\prime\prime\prime} + \kappa^{\prime}(s)s^{\prime}s_{11} + \kappa(s)s_{11}^{\prime} = 2s^{\prime\prime}\phi_1 + g_{01}\varphi\zeta^{\prime\prime}.$$

Multiplying the above equation by s, integrating by parts and using (2.39) and (2.82), we get

$$\begin{split} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \kappa'(s)s'ss_{11} \mathrm{d}z &= -2\phi_1 \int_{\mathbb{R}} (s')^2 \mathrm{d}z + g_{01}\varphi \int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta''s \mathrm{d}z \\ &= -2\phi_1 \int_{\mathbb{R}} (s')^2 \mathrm{d}z + \phi_1(s_+)^2 \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta's' \mathrm{d}z}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta's \mathrm{d}z} \\ &= -\phi_1(s_+)^2 \left(\frac{2\int_{\mathbb{R}} (s')^2 \mathrm{d}z}{(s_+)^2} - \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta's' \mathrm{d}z}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta's \mathrm{d}z} \right) \\ &= 0. \end{split}$$

Similarly, we have

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} \kappa'(s)s'ss_{12}dz = -2\phi_2 \int_{\mathbb{R}} (s')^2 dz + g_{02}\varphi \int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta''sdz$$
$$= -\phi_2(s_+)^2 \left(\frac{2\int_{\mathbb{R}} (s')^2 dz}{(s_+)^2} - \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta's'dz}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta'sdz}\right) = 0.$$

This concludes the proof of the lemma.

Appendix 2: More Details on Inner Expansion

Solving $\boldsymbol{\varphi}^{(1)}$, \boldsymbol{p}_{11} , and \boldsymbol{p}_{12}

In this section, we give a sketch of solving (2.99). The proof is split into three steps.

<u>Step 1</u>. Assume that $\varphi^{(1)}$ is known, by simplifications, we find p_{11} and p_{12} satisfy the

following system:

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t p_{11} - \Delta p_{11} = \mu_{01} p_{11} + \mu_{02} p_{12} + 2(\nabla p_{12} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{m} \cdot \mathbf{l} - 4c p_{11} (p_{11}^2 + p_{12}^2), & \text{in } \Omega^+, \\ \partial_t p_{12} - \Delta p_{12} = \mu_{03} p_{12} + \mu_{04} p_{11} + 2(\nabla p_{11} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{l} \cdot \mathbf{m} - 4c p_{12} (p_{11}^2 + p_{12}^2), & \text{in } \Omega^+, \\ (p_{11}(x, t), p_{12}(x, t)) \Big|_{t=0} = (p_{12}(x, 0), p_{13}(x, 0)), & \text{in } \Omega_0^+, \end{cases}$$
(7.1)

with the following mixed boundary values:

$$\begin{cases} 2s_{+}\nabla p_{11} \cdot \nabla \varphi + \mu_{05}s_{+}^{-1}p_{11} + 2s_{+}p_{12}((\nabla \mathbf{m} \cdot \nabla \varphi) \cdot \mathbf{l}) \\ = \mu_{06} - 2s_{+}^{2}((\nabla \mathbf{n} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(1)}) \cdot \mathbf{l}) - \mu_{07}\varphi^{(1)}, & \text{on } \Gamma, \\ 2s_{+}\nabla p_{12} \cdot \nabla \varphi + \mu_{06}s_{+}^{-1}p_{12} + 2s_{+}p_{11}((\nabla \mathbf{l} \cdot \nabla \varphi) \cdot \mathbf{m}) \\ = \mu_{08} - 2s_{+}^{2}((\nabla \mathbf{n} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(1)}) \cdot \mathbf{m}) - \mu_{09}\varphi^{(1)}, & \text{on } \Gamma. \end{cases}$$
(7.2)

Here, $\mu_{01}, \ldots, \mu_{09}$ are known terms and are defined by the following:

$$\begin{split} \mu_{01} &= \frac{1}{2} \left(\Delta \mathbf{E}_{1} : \mathbf{E}_{1} \right) + b(\mathbf{nn} + \mathbf{ll}) : \mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1} \left(\partial_{t} \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)} - \Delta \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)} \right), \\ \mu_{02} &= \frac{1}{2} \left(\Delta \mathbf{E}_{2} : \mathbf{E}_{1} \right) + b \left(\mathbf{ml} : \mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1} \left(\partial_{t} \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)} - \Delta \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)} \right) \right) - \partial_{t} \mathbf{m} \cdot \mathbf{l}, \\ \mu_{03} &= \frac{1}{2} \left(\Delta \mathbf{E}_{2} : \mathbf{E}_{2} \right) + b (\mathbf{nn} + \mathbf{mm}) : \mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1} \left(\partial_{t} \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)} - \Delta \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)} \right), \\ \mu_{04} &= \frac{1}{2} \left(\Delta \mathbf{E}_{1} : \mathbf{E}_{2} \right) + b \left(\mathbf{lm} : \mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1} \left(\partial_{t} \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)} - \Delta \mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(0)} \right) \right) - \partial_{t} \mathbf{l} \cdot \mathbf{m}, \end{split}$$

and

$$\begin{split} \mu_{05} &= \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(\frac{2b}{3} - \frac{8c}{3} s \right) s_{10} s^2 \mathrm{d}z, \\ \mu_{06} &= \Phi_1^{(1)} - \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(4 \nabla \partial_z \widehat{s_{01}} \cdot \nabla \varphi + 4 \partial_z \widehat{s_{02}} ((\nabla \mathbf{m} \cdot \nabla \varphi) \cdot \mathbf{l}) + \left(\frac{2b}{3} - \frac{8c}{3} s \right) s_{10} \widehat{s_{01}} \right) s \mathrm{d}z, \\ \mu_{07} &= 2g_{01} \int_{\mathbb{R}} s \zeta' \mathrm{d}z, \\ \mu_{08} &= \Phi_2^{(1)} - \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(4 \nabla \partial_z \widehat{s_{02}} \cdot \nabla \varphi + 4 \partial_z \widehat{s_{01}} ((\nabla \mathbf{l} \cdot \nabla \varphi) \cdot \mathbf{m}) + \left(\frac{2b}{3} - \frac{8c}{3} s \right) s_{10} \widehat{s_{02}} \right) s \mathrm{d}z, \\ \mu_{09} &= 2g_{02} \int_{\mathbb{R}} s \zeta' \mathrm{d}z. \end{split}$$

Deringer

Denote by \mathcal{P} the operator defined by the following:

$$\mathcal{P}: \varphi^{(1)} \to (p_{11}, p_{12}).$$
 (7.3)

<u>Step 2</u>. We aim to get $\varphi^{(1)}$ in $\Gamma(\delta)$ from the equation $\nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(1)} = 0$ which comes from (2.35). Since Γ is non-characteristic for the equation, we only need to obtain $\varphi^{(1)}$ on Γ by solving the following system:

$$\begin{cases} \varphi_t^{(1)} = \Delta \varphi^{(1)} + \mu_{010} \varphi^{(1)} + \mu_{011} (p_{11}^2 + p_{12}^2) + \mu_{012} p_{11} + \mu_{013} p_{12} + \mu_{014}, & \text{on } \Gamma, \\ \varphi^{(1)}(x, 0) = 0, & \text{on } \Gamma_0, \end{cases}$$
(7.4)

where $\mu_{010}, \ldots, \mu_{014}$ are known terms and are defined by the following:

$$\begin{split} \mu_{010} &= \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta'(z) s'(z) dz}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} (s'(z))^2 dz} g_{01}, \quad \mu_{011} = \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}} (b - 4cs) s^2 s' dz}{2s_+^2 \int_{\mathbb{R}} (s'(z))^2 dz}, \\ \mu_{012} &= \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}} (b - 4cs) s \widehat{s_{01}} s' dz}{s_+ \int_{\mathbb{R}} (s'(z))^2 dz}, \quad \mu_{013} = \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}} (b - 4cs) s \widehat{s_{02}} s' dz}{s_+ \int_{\mathbb{R}} (s'(z))^2 dz} \\ \mu_{014} &= \frac{1}{2 \int_{\mathbb{R}} (s'(z))^2 dz} \int_{\mathbb{R}} (b - 4cs) \Big(\widehat{s_{01}}^2 + \widehat{s_{02}}^2 \Big) s' dz. \end{split}$$

In [1] (p.200–201), let $x = X(\sigma, t), \sigma \in \mathbb{S}^2, t \in [0, T]$ be a parameterization of Γ . More concretely, we assume that

$$X_t(\sigma, t) = -\varphi_t \nabla \varphi(X(\sigma, t), t).$$

Let $\psi^{(1)}(\sigma, t) = \varphi^{(1)}(X(\sigma, t), t)$. Then, one has

$$\psi_t^{(1)} = \nabla \varphi^{(1)} \cdot X_t + \varphi_t^{(1)} = -\varphi_t \nabla \varphi^{(1)} \cdot \nabla \varphi + \varphi_t^{(1)} = \varphi_t^{(1)}|_{x = X(\sigma, t)},$$
(7.5)

and using (6.7) in "Appendix 1", we get

$$\Delta \varphi^{(1)}|_{x=X(\sigma,t)} = \nabla (\nabla \varphi^{(1)} \cdot \nabla \varphi) \cdot \nabla \varphi + \gamma(\hat{x}, \hat{y}) \nabla \varphi^{(1)} \cdot \nabla \varphi + \Delta_{\sigma} \psi^{(1)} = \Delta_{\sigma} \psi^{(1)}.$$
(7.6)

Therefore, (7.4) is reduced to the following parabolic equation:

$$\begin{cases} \psi_t^{(1)} = \Delta_{\sigma} \psi^{(1)} + \mu_{010} \psi^{(1)} + \mu_{011} (p_{12}^2 + p_{13}^2) + \mu_{012} p_{12} + \mu_{013} p_{13} + \mu_{014}, & \text{in } \mathbb{S}^2 \times (0, T), \\ \psi^{(1)}(\sigma, 0) = 0, & \text{in } \mathbb{S}^2 \times \{0\}, \end{cases}$$

$$(7.7)$$

where we used $\mu_{010}(\sigma, t) = \mu_{010}(X(\sigma, t), t), \dots, \mu_{014}(\sigma, t) = \mu_{014}(X(\sigma, t), t)$ and

$$(p_{11}, p_{12})(\sigma, t) = (p_{11}, p_{12})(x, t)|_{x = X(\sigma, t)} = \mathcal{P}(\varphi^{(1)})|_{x = X(\sigma, t)}$$

Noting that \mathcal{P} defined in (7.3) is bounded from $L^2(0, T; H^1(\mathbb{S}^2))$ to $L^2(0, T; H^{\frac{1}{2}}(\mathbb{S}^2))$, and then, there exists a solution $\psi^{(1)} \in L^2(0, T; H^1(\mathbb{S}^2))$ to (7.7), and then, a solution $(p_{11}, p_{12}) \in L^2(0, T; H^1(\Omega^+))$ to (7.1). It follows from further arguments that $\psi^{(1)}, p_{11}$ and p_{12} have higher regularity if $(p_{11}(x, 0), p_{12}(x, 0))$ is smooth.

🖄 Springer

Step 3. As in [1] (p.178), we extend p_{11} and p_{12} in Ω^+ smoothly to $\Gamma(\delta)$.

Solving $Q_{+}^{(1)}$, $P_{+}^{(2)}$, $Q_{I}^{(1)}$, $G^{(1)}$, and $Q_{I+}^{(2)}$

Once we determined p_{11} and p_{12} (and thus, $\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)}$ by (2.23)), we can solve $\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(2)}$, or equivalently p_{20}, p_{23} and p_{24} from (2.26). $\mathbf{Q}_{I,\perp}^{(1)}$ is determined by (2.80). $\mathbf{Q}_{I,\top}^{(1)}$, or $\{s_{1j}\}_{j=1}^{2}$, can be obtained using Lemma 2.7 in

the case of k = 0 to solve (2.56) with boundary conditions (2.58). Thus, $\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(1)}$ is solved and satisfies

Proposition 7.1 There holds

$$\left|\partial_{z}^{j}\partial_{x}^{l}\partial_{t}^{m}\left(\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(1)}(z,x,t)-\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(1)}(x,t)\right)\right| \leq C|z|\left(s_{+}-s(z)\right), \quad \text{for } z \to +\infty, \quad (7.8)$$

$$\left|\partial_{z}^{j}\partial_{x}^{l}\partial_{t}^{m}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(1)}(z,x,t)\right| \leq C|z|s(z), \quad \text{for } z \to -\infty,$$

$$(7.9)$$

where j, l, m = 0, 1, ... and the positive constant C is independent of z, x, and t.

As a corollary, one immediately has Corollary 7.2

$$\left|\partial_{z}^{j}\partial_{x}^{l}\partial_{t}^{m}\left(\mathbf{F}^{(1)}(z,x,t)-\mathbf{A}_{1}(x,t)\right)\right| \leq C|z|\left(s_{+}-s(z)\right), \quad \text{for } z \to \infty,$$
(7.10)

$$\left|\partial_{z}^{j}\partial_{x}^{l}\partial_{t}^{m}\mathbf{F}^{(1)}(z,x,t)\right| \leq C|z|s(z), \quad \text{for } z \to -\infty,$$
(7.11)

where $j, l, m = 0, 1, ..., A_1$ is defined in (2.26) and the positive constant C is independent of z, x, and t.

In order that (2.88), (2.89), and (2.90) hold for $(x,t) \in \Gamma(\delta) \setminus \Gamma$, we define the following:

$$g_{10}(x,t) = \begin{cases} \frac{-\frac{3}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbf{F}^{(1)} : \mathbf{E}_0 s' dz}{\varphi \int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s' dz}, & (x,t) \in \Gamma(\delta) \backslash \Gamma; \\ \frac{-\frac{3}{2} \nabla (\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbf{F}^{(1)} : \mathbf{E}_0 s' dz) \cdot \nabla \varphi}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s' dz}, & (x,t) \in \Gamma, \end{cases}$$

and

for
$$i = 1, 2$$
, $g_{1i}(x, t) = \begin{cases} \frac{-\frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbf{F}^{(1)} : \mathbf{E}_i s dz}{\varphi \int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s dz}, & (x, t) \in \Gamma(\delta) \backslash \Gamma; \\ \frac{-\frac{1}{2} \nabla (\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbf{F}^{(1)} : \mathbf{E}_i s dz) \cdot \nabla \varphi}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s dz}, & (x, t) \in \Gamma. \end{cases}$

Deringer
Furthermore, for simplicity, we take $g_{13} = g_{14} = 0$, and thus, we get **G**⁽¹⁾.

Finally, with the help of (2.88), (7.10) and (7.11), we can obtain s_{20} , s_{23} and s_{24} , and then, $\mathbf{Q}_{I,\perp}^{(2)}$, by solving (2.84) and (2.86) with the corresponding boundary condition (2.87). Here, we have used the fact that

$$\frac{3}{2}\mathbf{A}_{1} : \mathbf{E}_{0} = \frac{3}{2}\mathcal{H}_{+}\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(2)} : \mathbf{E}_{0} = \frac{3}{2}ap_{20}\mathbf{E}_{0} : \mathbf{E}_{0} = ap_{20},$$

which is known as we have already solved $\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(2)}$.

Compatibility Conditions for Solving $\mathbf{Q}_{l}^{(k+1)}$

By (2.46), we get

$$\mathcal{L}_I \mathbf{Q}_I^{(k+1)} = \mathbf{F}^{(k)} + \varphi \mathbf{G}^{(k)} \zeta', \qquad (7.12)$$

where

$$\mathbf{F}^{(k)} = \sum_{0 \le i \le k} \left(\partial_z \mathbf{Q}_I^{(i)} (\Delta \varphi^{(k-i)} - \partial_t \varphi^{(k-i)}) + 2\nabla \partial_z \mathbf{Q}_I^{(i)} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(k-i)} \right) \\ + \sum_{1 \le i \le k} \varphi^{(i)} \mathbf{G}^{(k-i)} \zeta' + \Delta \mathbf{Q}_I^{(k-1)} - \partial_t \mathbf{Q}_I^{(k-1)} - \mathbf{B}_I^{(k)} - \mathbf{C}_I^{(k)} - \mathbf{G}^{(k-1)} \zeta' z.$$

Let

$$\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k+1)}(z,x,t) = \sum_{j=0}^{4} s_{(k+1)j}(z,x,t) \mathbf{E}_{j}(x,t), \quad \mathbf{G}^{(k)}(x,t) = \sum_{j=0}^{4} g_{kj}(z,x,t) \mathbf{E}_{j}(x,t).$$

Then, the system (7.12) combined with (2.4) (i = k + 1) is reduced into the following five ODEs:

$$-s_{(k+1)0}'' + \theta(s(z))s_{(k+1)0} = \frac{3}{2}(\mathbf{F}^{(k)} : \mathbf{E}_0) + g_{k0}\varphi\zeta',$$
(7.13)

$$-s_{(k+1)j}'' + \kappa(s(z))s_{(k+1)j} = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{F}^{(k)} : \mathbf{E}_j) + g_{kj}\varphi\zeta', \quad \text{for } j = 1, 2,$$
(7.14)

$$-s_{(k+1)j}'' + \iota(s(z))s_{(k+1)j} = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{F}^{(k)} : \mathbf{E}_j) + g_{kj}\varphi\zeta', \quad \text{for } j = 3, 4,$$
(7.15)

with

$$s_{(k+1)j}(-\infty, x, t) = 0, \quad s_{(k+1)j}(+\infty, x, t) = p_{(k+1)j}(x, t), \quad j = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4.$$
 (7.16)

Deringer

To solve (7.13)–(7.14), we need to verify all the terms on the right-hand side of them satisfy the corresponding compatibility conditions by Lemmas 2.6–2.7, that is, to guarantee the following compatibility conditions for (7.13)–(7.14):

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(\frac{3}{2} (\mathbf{F}^{(k)} : \mathbf{E}_0) + g_{k0} \varphi \zeta' \right) s' dz = 0,$$
(7.17)

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(\frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{F}^{(k)} : \mathbf{E}_j) + g_{kj} \varphi \zeta' \right) s dz = 0, \quad \text{for } j = 1, 2.$$
(7.18)

In what follows, we first ensure that (7.17) and (7.18) hold on Γ , which will lead to the evolution law of $\varphi^{(k)}$ on Γ and the boundary values of p_{k1} and p_{k2} on Γ . Then, we ensure that (7.17) and (7.18) hold for $(x, t) \in \Gamma(\delta) \setminus \Gamma$, which lead to the definitions of g_{k0}, g_{k1} , and g_{k2} .

The Equations for $\varphi^{(k)}$, p_{k1} and p_{k2} on Γ

It is noted that on Γ :

$$\begin{split} \mathbf{F}^{(k)} &= \partial_z \mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)} (\Delta \varphi^{(k)} - \partial_t \varphi^{(k)}) + 2 \nabla \partial_z \mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(k)} + \varphi^{(k)} \mathbf{G}^{(0)} \zeta' + 2 \nabla \partial_z \mathbf{Q}_I^{(k)} \cdot \nabla \varphi \\ &- \mathbf{B} \Big(\mathbf{Q}_I^{(1)}, \mathbf{Q}_I^{(k)} \Big) - 2 \mathbf{C} \Big(\mathbf{Q}_I^{(1)}, \mathbf{Q}_I^{(0)}, \mathbf{Q}_I^{(k)} \Big) + \mathbf{H}_{k-1}, \end{split}$$

where

$$\begin{split} \mathbf{H}_{k-1} &= \sum_{1 \leq i \leq k-1} \left(\partial_{z} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(i)} (\Delta \varphi^{(k-i)} - \partial_{t} \varphi^{(k-i)}) + 2 \nabla \partial_{z} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(i)} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(k-i)} + \varphi^{(i)} \mathbf{G}^{(k-i)} \zeta^{\prime} \right) \\ &+ \Delta \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k-1)} - \partial_{t} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k-1)} - \mathbf{G}^{(k-1)} \zeta^{\prime} z \\ &- b \left(\frac{1}{3} \mathbf{I} \sum_{2 \leq i \leq k-1} (\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(i)} : \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k+1-i)}) - \sum_{2 \leq i \leq k-1} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(i)} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k+1-i)} \right) \\ &- c \left(2 \sum_{2 \leq i \leq k-1} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(i)} \left(\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(0)} : \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k+1-i)} \right) + \sum_{1 \leq i,j \leq k-1, i+j \leq k+1} \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k+1-i-j)} \left(\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(i)} : \mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(j)} \right) \right), \end{split}$$

which depends on the terms up to k - 1 order.

Direct computations yield that on Γ

$$\begin{split} \mathbf{F}^{(k)} &: \mathbf{E}_{0} = \frac{2}{3}s'(\Delta\varphi^{(k)} - \partial_{t}\varphi^{(k)}) + \frac{2}{3}g_{00}\varphi^{(k)}\zeta' + \frac{4}{3}\nabla\partial_{z}s_{k0} \cdot \nabla\varphi \\ &\quad + \frac{2b}{3}\left(\frac{2}{3}s_{10}s_{k0} + s_{11}s_{k1} + s_{12}s_{k2}\right) - \frac{8c}{3}s\left(s_{10}s_{k0} + s_{11}s_{k1} + s_{12}s_{k2}\right) + \mathbf{H}_{k-1} : \mathbf{E}_{0}, \\ \mathbf{F}^{(k)} &: \mathbf{E}_{1} = 4s'\left((\nabla\mathbf{n}\cdot\nabla\varphi^{(k)})\cdot\mathbf{l}\right) + 2g_{01}\varphi^{(k)}\zeta' + 4\nabla\partial_{z}s_{k1} \cdot \nabla\varphi + 4\partial_{z}s_{k2}((\nabla\mathbf{m}\cdot\nabla\varphi)\cdot\mathbf{l}) \\ &\quad + 2b\left(\frac{1}{3}s_{10}s_{k1} + \frac{1}{3}s_{11}s_{k0} + s_{11}s_{k4} + s_{12}s_{k3}\right) - \frac{8c}{3}s\left(s_{10}s_{k1} + s_{11}s_{k0}\right) + \mathbf{H}_{k-1} : \mathbf{E}_{1}, \\ \mathbf{F}^{(k)} &: \mathbf{E}_{2} = 4s'\left((\nabla\mathbf{n}\cdot\nabla\varphi^{(k)})\cdot\mathbf{m}\right) + 2g_{02}\varphi^{(k)}\zeta' + 4\nabla\partial_{z}s_{k2} \cdot \nabla\varphi + 4\partial_{z}s_{k1}((\nabla\mathbf{l}\cdot\nabla\varphi)\cdot\mathbf{m}) \\ &\quad + 2b\left(\frac{1}{3}s_{10}s_{k2} + \frac{1}{3}s_{12}s_{k0} + s_{11}s_{k3} - s_{12}s_{k4}\right) - \frac{8c}{3}s\left(s_{10}s_{k2} + s_{12}s_{k0}\right) + \mathbf{H}_{k-1} : \mathbf{E}_{2}. \end{split}$$

As $\varphi = 0$ on Γ , (7.17) implies that $\int_{\mathbb{R}} (\mathbf{F}^{(k)} : \mathbf{E}_0) s' dz = 0$ on Γ , which is equivalent to

$$\partial_t \varphi^{(k)} = \Delta \varphi^{(k)} + g_{00} \varphi^{(k)} \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s' dz}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} (s')^2 dz} + \frac{1}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} (s')^2 dz} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(s_{11} s_{k1} + s_{12} s_{k2} \right) (b - 4cs) s' dz + \frac{3\Phi_0^{(k)}}{2 \int_{\mathbb{R}} (s')^2 dz}, \quad \text{on } \Gamma,$$
(7.19)

where

$$\Phi_0^{(k)} = \frac{4}{3} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \nabla \partial_z s_{k0} \cdot \nabla \varphi s' dz + \int_{\mathbb{R}} s_{10} s_{k0} \left(\frac{4b}{9} - \frac{8c}{3}s\right) s' dz + \int_{\mathbb{R}} (\mathbf{H}_{k-1} : \mathbf{E}_0) s' dz.$$

In addition, (7.18) implies that $\int_{\mathbb{R}} (\mathbf{F}^{(k)} : \mathbf{E}_i) s dz = 0$ on Γ for j = 1, 2, which are equivalent to

$$2(s_{+})^{2} \left((\nabla \mathbf{n} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(k)}) \cdot \mathbf{l} \right) + 2g_{01} \varphi^{(k)} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s dz + 4 \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(\nabla \partial_{z} s_{k1} \cdot \nabla \varphi + \partial_{z} s_{k2} ((\nabla \mathbf{m} \cdot \nabla \varphi) \cdot \mathbf{l}) + \left(\frac{2b}{3} - \frac{8c}{3} s \right) s_{10} s_{k1} \right) s dz + \Phi_{1}^{(k)} = 0, \quad \text{on } \Gamma,$$
(7.20)

$$2(s_{+})^{2} \left((\nabla \mathbf{n} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(k)}) \cdot \mathbf{m} \right) + 2g_{02}\varphi^{(k)} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s dz + 4 \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(\nabla \partial_{z} s_{k2} \cdot \nabla \varphi + \partial_{z} s_{k1} ((\nabla \mathbf{l} \cdot \nabla \varphi) \cdot \mathbf{m}) + \left(\frac{2b}{3} - \frac{8c}{3} s \right) s_{10} s_{k2} \right) s dz + \Phi_{2}^{(k)} = 0, \quad \text{on } \Gamma,$$
(7.21)

🖄 Springer

where

$$\Phi_{1}^{(k)} = \int_{\mathbb{R}} s_{11} s_{k0} \left(\frac{2b}{3} - \frac{8c}{3}s\right) s dz + 2b \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(s_{11} s_{k4} + s_{12} s_{k3}\right) s dz + \int_{\mathbb{R}} (\mathbf{H}_{k-1} : \mathbf{E}_{1}) s dz,$$

$$\Phi_{2}^{(k)} = \int_{\mathbb{R}} s_{12} s_{k0} \left(\frac{2b}{3} - \frac{8c}{3}s\right) s dz + 2b \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(s_{11} s_{k3} - s_{12} s_{k4}\right) s dz + \int_{\mathbb{R}} (\mathbf{H}_{k-1} : \mathbf{E}_{2}) s dz.$$

Furthermore, by the induction, s_{k1} and s_{k2} can be solved and there hold (one can see (2.95) for s_{11} and s_{12}):

$$s_{ki}(z, x, t) = -s(z) \int_{z}^{+\infty} s(\varsigma)^{-2} \int_{\varsigma}^{+\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{F}^{(k-1)} : \mathbf{E}_{i} + g_{(k-1)i} \varphi \zeta'\right) (\tau, x, t) s(\tau) d\tau d\varsigma + s(z) \frac{p_{ki}(x, t)}{s_{+}}, \quad i = 1, 2.$$
(7.22)

Thus, (7.19), (7.20), and (7.21) actually are three equations on Γ for $\varphi^{(k)}$, p_{k1} , and p_{k2} .

Solving $\pmb{\varphi}^{(k)},\mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(k)},\mathbf{P}_{\bot}^{(k+1)},\mathbf{Q}_{l,\top}^{(k)},\mathbf{G}^{(k)},\mathbf{Q}_{l,\bot}^{(k+1)}$

In summary, up to now, we have a nonlinear differential system for $\varphi^{(k)}$, p_{k1} , and p_{k2} as follows:

$$\begin{cases} (2.34) \ (i=k) : \text{ the evolution equation for } \mathbf{P}_{\mathsf{T}}^{(k)} & \text{ in } \Omega^{+}, \\ (7.19) : \text{ the evolution equation for } \varphi^{(k)} & \text{ on } \Gamma, \\ (7.20), \ (7.21) : \text{ the boundary condition for } p_{k1} \text{ and } p_{k2} \text{ on } \Gamma, \\ \nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(k)} = -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^{k-1} \nabla \varphi^{(j)} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(k-j)}, & \text{ in } \Gamma(\delta), \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{cases} \nabla \varphi^{(k)} = -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^{k-1} \nabla \varphi^{(j)} \cdot \nabla \varphi^{(k-j)}, & \text{ in } \Gamma(\delta), \\ \mathbf{P}_{\mathsf{T}}^{(k)}(x,t) \Big|_{t=0} = \mathbf{P}_{\mathsf{T}}^{(k)}(x,0), & \text{ in } \Omega_{0}^{+}, \\ \varphi^{(k)}(x,0) = 0, & \text{ on } \Gamma_{0}, \end{cases}$$

$$\end{cases}$$

where the fourth equation comes from (2.35) (i = k). Solving (7.23) is similar to the argument of solving (2.99), and hence, the corresponding details are omitted here. In addition, we also extend p_{11} and p_{12} in Ω^+ smoothly to $\Gamma(\delta)$ as in [1] (p.178). Thus, $\mathbf{P}_{\tau}^{(k)}$ is solved.

By that induction that $\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(k)}$ is known, we know that $\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(k)}$ is known. Using (2.32) (i = k), we can get

$$\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(k+1)} = \mathcal{H}_{+}^{-1} \mathbf{A}_{k},$$

which implies that $p_{(k+1)j}$ (j = 0, 3, 4) can be solved.

From (7.22), we immediately get $\{s_{kj}\}_{j=1,2}$, or equivalently, $\mathbf{Q}_{l,T}^{(k)}$. In addition, it holds that

Proposition 7.3 There holds

$$\left|\partial_{z}^{j}\partial_{x}^{l}\partial_{t}^{m}\left(\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k)}(z,x,t)-\mathbf{Q}_{+}^{(k)}(x,t)\right)\right| \leq C|z|^{k}\left(s_{+}-s(z)\right), \quad \text{for } z \gg 1, \quad (7.24)$$

$$\left|\partial_{z}^{j}\partial_{x}^{l}\partial_{t}^{m}\mathbf{Q}_{I}^{(k)}(z,x,t)\right| \leq C|z|^{k}s(z), \quad \text{for } z < 0 \text{ and } |z| \gg 1,$$
(7.25)

where j, l, m = 0, 1, ... and the positive constant C is independent of z, x, and t.

As a corollary, one has Corollary 7.4

$$\left|\partial_{z}^{j}\partial_{x}^{l}\partial_{t}^{m}\left(\mathbf{F}^{(k)}(z,x,t)-\mathbf{A}_{k}(x,t)\right)\right| \leq C|z|^{k}\left(s_{+}-s(z)\right), \quad \text{for } z \gg 1, \qquad (7.26)$$

$$\left|\partial_{z}^{j}\partial_{x}^{l}\partial_{t}^{m}\mathbf{F}^{(k)}(z,x,t)\right| \leq C|z|^{k}s(z), \quad \text{for } z < 0 \text{ and } |z| \gg 1,$$
(7.27)

where $j, l, m = 0, 1, \dots, A_k$ is defined in (2.32) (i = k) and the positive constant C is independent of z, x, t.

In order that (7.17) and (7.18) hold for $(x, t) \in \Gamma(\delta) \setminus \Gamma$, we define the following:

$$g_{k0}(x,t) = \begin{cases} -\frac{\frac{3}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbf{F}^{(k)} : \mathbf{E}_0 s' dz}{\varphi \int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s' dz}, & (x,t) \in \Gamma(\delta) \backslash \Gamma; \\ -\frac{\frac{3}{2} \nabla (\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbf{F}^{(k)} : \mathbf{E}_0 s' dz) \cdot \nabla \varphi}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s' dz}, & (x,t) \in \Gamma, \end{cases}$$

and

$$g_{ki}(x,t) = \begin{cases} -\frac{\frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbf{F}^{(k)} : \mathbf{E}_{i} s dz}{\varphi \int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s dz}, & (x,t) \in \Gamma(\delta) \backslash \Gamma; \\ -\frac{\frac{1}{2} \nabla (\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbf{F}^{(k)} : \mathbf{E}_{i} s dz) \cdot \nabla \varphi}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \zeta' s dz}, & (x,t) \in \Gamma, \end{cases} \quad i = 1, 2.$$

Furthermore, for simplicity, we take $g_{k3} = g_{k4} = 0$. Therefore, we arrive at **G**^(k).

Now, we focus on solving (7.13) and (7.15) with the corresponding boundary conditions in (7.16) to get $s_{(k+1)j}$ (j = 0, 3, 4), and then, $\mathbf{Q}_{I,\perp}^{(k+1)}$. For this, we need to check all the terms on the right-hand side of them satisfy the corresponding decay conditions in Lemmas 2.6 and 2.8. (7.27) implies that the second kind of decay condition holds. For the first kind of decay condition, we only check

$$\left. \partial_{z}^{j} \partial_{x}^{l} \partial_{t}^{m} \left(\frac{3}{2} \mathbf{F}^{(k)} : \mathbf{E}_{0} + g_{k0} \varphi \zeta' - a p_{(k+1)0} \right) \right| = O(\mathrm{e}^{-Cz}) \quad \text{for } z \to +\infty,$$

since the other cases are similar. In fact, according to (7.26), one has

$$\left| \partial_z^j \partial_x^l \partial_t^m \left(\frac{3}{2} \mathbf{F}^{(k)} : \mathbf{E}_0 + g_{k0} \varphi \zeta' - \frac{3}{2} \mathbf{A}_k : \mathbf{E}_0 \right) \right| = O(\mathrm{e}^{-Cz}) \quad \text{for } z \to +\infty.$$

Moreover, from (2.32) (i = k), we obtain

$$\frac{3}{2}\mathbf{A}_{k}: \mathbf{E}_{0} = \frac{3}{2}\mathcal{H}_{+}\mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(k+1)}: \mathbf{E}_{0} = \frac{3}{2}ap_{(k+1)0}\mathbf{E}_{0}: \mathbf{E}_{0} = ap_{(k+1)0}.$$

Therefore, we have obtained $\varphi^{(k)}, \mathbf{P}_{\top}^{(k)}, \mathbf{P}_{\perp}^{(k+1)}, \mathbf{Q}_{I,\top}^{(k)}, \mathbf{G}^{(k)}$ and $\mathbf{Q}_{I,\perp}^{(k+1)}$.

References

- Alikakos, N.D., Bates, P.W., Chen, X.: Convergence of the Cahn–Hilliard equation to the Hele-Shaw model. Arch. Ration. Mech. Anal. 128, 165–205 (1994)
- Allen, S., Cahn, J.: A microscopic theory for antiphase motion and its application to antiphase domain coarsening. Acta Metall. 27, 1084–1095 (1979)
- Bronsard, L., Kohn, R.V.: On the slowness of the phase boundary motion in one space dimension. Commun. Pure Appl. Math. 43, 983–997 (1990)
- Bronsard, L., Kohn, R.V.: Motion by mean curvature limit of Ginzburg–Landau as the singular dynamics. J. Differ. Equ. 237, 211–237 (1991)
- Bronsard, L., Stoth, B.: The singular limit of a vector-valued reaction-diffusion process. Trans. Am. Math. Soc. 350, 4931–4953 (1998)
- Caflisch, R.E.: The fluid dynamic limit of the nonlinear Boltzmann equation. Commun. Pure Appl. Math. 33(5), 651–666 (1980)
- Chen, X.: Generation and propagation of interfaces for reaction-diffusion equations. J. Differ. Equ. 96, 116–141 (1992)
- Chen, X.: Spectrum for the Allen–Cahn, Cahn–Hilliard, and phase-field equations for generic interfaces. Commun. Partial Differ. Equ. 19, 1371–1395 (1994)
- de Mottoni, P., Schatzman, M.: Geometrical evolution of developed interfaces. Trans. Am. Math. Soc. 347, 1533–1589 (1995)
- Evans, L.C., Soner, H.M., Souganidis, P.E.: Phase transitions and generalized motion by mean curvature. Commun. Pure Appl. Math. 45, 1097–1123 (1992)
- De Gennes, P.G.: Short range order effects in the isotropic phase of nematics and cholesteric. Mol. Cryst. Liq. Cryst. 12, 193–214 (1971)
- 12. Fei, M., Wang, W., Zhang, P., Zhang, Z.: Dynamics of the nematic–isotropic sharp interface for the liquid crystal. SIAM J. Appl. Math. **75**, 1700–1724 (2015)
- Ilmanen, T.: Convergence of the Allen–Cahn equation to Brakke's motion by mean curvature. J. Differ. Geom. 38, 417–461 (1993)
- 14. Kamil, S.M., Bhattacharjee, A.K., Adhikari, R., Menon, G.I.: The isotropic–nematic interface with an oblique anchoring condition. J. Chem. Phys. **131**, 174701 (2009)
- 15. Lin, F.H., Pan, X., Wang, C.: Phase transition for potentials of high-dimensional wells. Commun. Pure Appl. Math. **65**, 833–888 (2012)
- Majumdar, A., Milewski, P.A., Spicer, A.: Front propagation at the nematic-isotropic transition temperature. SIAM J. Appl. Math. 76, 1296–1320 (2016)
- 17. Park, J., Wang, W., Zhang, P., Zhang, Z.: On minimizers for the isotropic-nematic interface problem. Calc. Var. Partial. Differ. Equ. 56, 41 (2017)
- Popa-Nita, V., Sluckin, T.J.: Kinetics of the nematic-isotropic interface. J. Phys. II (France) 6, 873– 884 (1996)

- Popa-Nita, V., Sluckin, T.J., Wheeler, A.A.: Statics and kinetics at the nematic-isotropic interface: effects of biaxiality. J. Phys. II (France) 7, 1225–1243 (1997)
- Rubinstein, J., Sternberg, P., Keller, J.: Fast reaction, slow diffusion, and curve shortening. SIAM J. Appl. Math. 49, 116–133 (1989)
- 21. Rubinstein, J., Sternberg, P., Keller, J.: Reaction–diffusion processes and evolution to harmonic maps. SIAM J. Appl. Math. **49**, 1722–1733 (1989)
- 22. Strauss, W.A.: Partial Differential Equations: An Introduction, 2nd edn. Wiley, Hoboken (2008)
- Wang, W., Zhang, P., Zhang, Z.: Rigorous derivation from Landau–de Gennes theory to Ericksen-Leslie theory. SIAM J. Math. Anal. 47, 127–158 (2015)
- 24. Wang, W., Zhang, P., Zhang, Z.: The small Deborah number limit of the Doi–Onsager equation to the Ericksen–Leslie equation. Commun. Pure Appl. Math. **68**, 1326–1398 (2015)